1.50

Henry N. Hagues
from
The Publishers.

1.50

Henry M. Haynes
from
The Publishers.

1.50

Henry M. Hayne
from
the Publishers.

1.50

Henry M. Magnell
from
The Publishers.

N. W. Magnes

A

FIRST LATIN BOOK,

INTRODUCTORY TO

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

For use with Harkness', Andrews and Stoddard's, Bullions and Morris', and Allen's Grammars.

BY

DANIEL G. THOMPSON,

TEACHER IN THE SPRINGFIELD (MASS.) HIGH SCHOOL.

CHICAGO:

S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

1872.

RIVERSIDE, CAMBRIDGE:
STEREOTYPED AND PRINTED BY
H. O. HOUGHTON AND COMPANY.

To

D. D. GORHAM,

NORTHAMPTON, MASS.

MY INSTRUCTOR IN THE RUDIMENTS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE,

This Book

IS RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED.

PREFACE.

ANDREWS and Stoddard's, Harkness', Bullions and Morris', and Allen's are the standard manual Latin Grammars in use in different parts of the country. It is believed that the grammar which is to be the student's main authority until he enters college, at least, should in its full form be his constant companion from the beginning of his study. The general principles of grammar are universal; and the particular text-books above mentioned differ mainly in their arrangement of details and their modes of expression. Accordingly, if a philosophical method of study can be devised, there is no reason why it may not apply equally well to different grammatical text-books. To construct such a method which may be made available for the works specified, is the aim of this book.

The principles upon which we have proceeded are mainly these: —

First. That the learner should commence his study of Latin grammar with the verb, in order that he may be introduced to sentences as speedily as possible.

Second. That only so much of the grammar be learned at first as will give the general form of the language, leaving the particulars to be afterward filled in.

Third. That drill-exercises on the varieties of inflection are necessary in addition to the examples of the grammar, to fix the latter definitely in mind.

Fourth. That in close connection with the study of the grammar and the drill-exercises, there should be carried on a con-

tinual application of the laws learned, to the language itself, in progressive sentences taken from some one classical Latin author.

Attention is called to some of the details of the plan.

After a few preliminary lessons, the verb is commenced, by tenses. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative mode are taken, each by itself, through the four conjugations in both voices. The form of each conjugation is thus made apparent and the differences noticed. For convenience in carrying out this idea, Tables I. and II. are added, supplementary to the grammar used. Upon learning thus enough of the verb to insure a successful study of sentences, the noun, adjective, pronoun, and adverb succeed in regular order, and the remainder of Part I. is devoted to the completion of verbs. Drill-exercises, English and Latin, complementary to each other, accompany each topic of the grammar, with vocabularies for the earlier lessons. Attending each subject also, are exercises in syntax, drawn mainly from Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic war, increasing in difficulty and finally superseding the exercises on the inflections after the completion of regular verbs.

Part II. presents entire the first twenty-nine sections of the Commentaries, together with grammar lessons, reviewing and enlarging upon subjects previously studied, paying special attention to analysis of sentences and words, and to the syntax of modes and tenses. On the text of the Cæsar the best authorities have been consulted. Kraner in the Tauchnitz edition has been very generally followed.

The Tables in the main explain themselves. It has been thought best to give an opportunity for the pursuit of what we may perhaps designate as the *Stem Method.* Tables II. and IV. are based upon Madvig, with some slight variation and carry out the analysis according to the method by him used somewhat beyond Bullions and Morris' Grammar. For the benefit of those instructors who wish at the outset to teach the

classification of nouns and verbs by means of the stems, references and directions are inclosed in brackets. The whole subject is taken up again near the end of Part II.

Much repetition both of grammatical references and sentences will be discovered. In Part II. the learner will meet with most of the sentences of Part I. It is thought that the references in the notes and at the head of the lessons indicate all that should be made a subject of study at this early stage. By one recitation daily, allowing for the usual holidays and vacations, the book will probably be completed in about one year. The student will then be prepared to pursue the Commentaries, into which he will have advanced some distance, or to read some other classical author.

Throughout the work we have sought to impress the idea that a thorough study of the grammatical laws of the language is the only path to success in learning to translate. To this end we have endeavored to present each subject distinctly, as a whole embracing its parts, so that the beginner shall recognize the connection and inter-dependence of those parts, without being blinded and bewildered by a multitude of facts destitute of system and order.

From Richard's Latin Lessons was derived the idea of the treatment of the verb in the incomplete tenses, and from Bullions and Morris' Grammar the plan of a part of Tables IV. and VI. Valuable assistance has been obtained from Allen's Latin Lessons, Harkness' Introductory Latin Book; Crosby's, Whiton's, and Boise's Greek Lessons, Andrews', Harkness', Brooks', and Chase and Stuart's Cæsars; and from Madvig's and Zumpt's Grammars. Our great indebtedness to the friends who have aided us by revising manuscript and proof is also acknowledged.

SPRINGFIELD, MASS., *March* 1, 1872.

CONTENTS.

PART I. PAGE

Grammar and Exercises 1–32

PART II.

Cæsar de Bello Gallico. Sections I.–XXIX 35–63

NOTES 64–107

TABLES.

I. Inflections of Verbs 110–123

II. Inflections of Verbs on the Stem System . . . 124–133

III. Andrews and Stoddard's Rules of Syntax . . 134–141

IV. Analysis of Nouns on the Stem System . . . 142–156

V. Forms for Parsing 157–159

VI. Analysis of the Oratio Obliqua of Cæsar . . 160–169

SPECIAL EXERCISES 170–175

ADDITIONAL SENTENCES, to be translated into Latin . 176–178

VOCABULARY 179–215

ABBREVIATIONS.

H. HARKNESS' GRAMMAR
A. ALLEN.
Gr. GRAMMAR.
A. & S. ANDREWS AND STODDARD'S.
B. & M. BULLIONS AND MORRIS'.
R. RULE.

---

a.	active.	*f.*	feminine.	*part.*	participle.
abl.	ablative.	*gen.*	genitive.	*pas.*	passive.
acc.	accusative.	*imp.*	impersonal.	*pl.*	plural.
adj.	adjective.	*ind.*	indeclinable.	*prep.*	preposition.
adv.	adverb.	*inf.*	infinitive.	*pro.*	pronoun.
conj.	conjunction.	*int.*	interjection.	*rel.*	relative.
comp.	comparative.	*irr.*	irregular.	*sc.*	supply.
dat.	dative.	*lit.*	literally.	*sing.*	singular.
def.	defective.	*m.*	masculine.	*subj.*	subjunctive.
dem.	demonstrative.	*n.*	neuter.	*subs.*	substantive.
dep.	deponent.	*num.*	numeral.	*sup.*	superlative.
dim.	diminutive.	*obs.*	obsolete.		

LATIN LESSONS.

I.

THE Latin language was spoken by the ancient Romans. It was first used by and took its name from the Latī'ni, a tribe of the ancient Italians, occupying Latium (Lā'she-um), a province in Central Italy. Of Latium, Rome became the capital. Thence the language extended itself with the Roman conquests throughout the greater part of southern and western Europe. Rome is said to have been founded about seven hundred and fifty years before the Christian era. The earliest Latin writings that have come down to us were composed about two hundred years before the birth of Christ. The Latin language followed the decline of the Roman power, and, in the sixth century after Christ, became extinct, being corrupted and mixed with foreign tongues, out of which mixture many of the modern languages grew. The Latin contributes largely to our own tongue. Many changes took place in the Latin language during the time in which it was spoken. The

Latin on which our grammars are based is that used in the most flourishing period of Roman power, extending from about one hundred years before to one hundred years after Christ.

II.

LATIN GRAMMAR teaches the laws of the Latin language and their application.

Latin words are divided into eight general classes called PARTS OF SPEECH. They are, — *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions,* and *Interjections.*

I. *A Noun, or Substantive,* is a name; as of a person, place, or thing.

II. *An Adjective,* is a word used to qualify or define nouns.

III. *A Pronoun,* is a word used instead of a noun to designate the idea which the noun expresses, without *naming* the object.

IV. *A Verb,* is a word which expresses the idea of existence, condition, or action, affirmed of a subject.

V. *An Adverb,* is a word used to make a stricter definition of the idea expressed by a verb, adjective, or another adverb.

VI. *A Preposition,* is used to mark the relation which some other word in the sentence bears to a particular noun or pronoun.

VII. *A Conjunction*, is used to connect sentences and parts of sentences.

VIII. *An Interjection*, is a mere sound called forth by certain feelings, and has no grammatical construction.

Nouns, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, and sometimes *Adverbs*, change their form to express various modifications of meaning, and are called INFLECTED WORDS.

Prepositions, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections* are not inflected.

The words of the last class (including sometimes *adverbs*) are termed PARTICLES.

III.

DIVISION OF LETTERS AND PRONUNCIATION.

Harkness' Lat. Gram. (rev. ed.). §§ 1; 2–5 (inclusive); 17; 20–28; 6–13; *English meth.* 1; 2–5; 17; 20–28; 14–16, *Continental meth.*

Andrews & Stoddard's Lat. Gram. (rev. ed.). §§ 1–4; 6; 13–23; 7–12.

Bullions & Morris' Lat. Gram. §§ 1–7; 10–13; 16–23 *English meth.* 1–7; 12; 13; 14; 16–23, *Continental meth.*

Allen's Manual Lat. Gram. §§ 1–4.

1. (*a.*) A′mo, a′mat, mo′net, re′gis, cor′nu, de′æ, pater, mensa, obit,[1] dies, libros. (*b.*) Mo′nĕ-o,

[1] Compounded of *ob* and *it* from *eo*.

ad-o-les'co, salubrĭtas, diēbus, sublātus. (*c.*) Rep're-hĕn'do, rep're-hen-dē'bam, magnificentissĭme, Dædălus, Pompēius.

2. (*a.*) Successit, quærĭtur, Græcārum, Græce, Cæsar, irrīdens, physĭcus. (*b.*) Xanthippus, societātis, septentriōnes, audiebātur, persuasūrus, reditiōnis, Aquilēiam, pabulationĭbus, populationibusque. (*c.*) Uxorius, anxios, angustias, postquam, Mnestheus, quadraginta, diērum, respublĭca, charta.

IV.

THE VERB.

Harkness. 192–203. [*Stem meth.* Omit 203.]

Andrews & S. 140–150; 151, 4. (Omit fine print after 141, II.)

Bullions & M. 258–276.

Allen. 23–28; 30, I., II.; 34, I.

Learn also the endings of the Present Tense, Indicative Mode, Active and Passive Voices in all the conjugations. Table I. of this book, p. 109, §§ 1, 2. [Or Table II. p. 124, §§ 1; 2; 5. *Stem meth.*]

VOCABULARY.

Amo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *I love.*
Audio, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *I hear.*
Dico, -ĕre, dixi, dictum, *I say, speak, tell.*
Moneo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum, *I advise.*
Punio, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *I punish.*
Rego, -ĕre, rexi, rectum, *I rule, govern.*
Terreo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum, *I frighten.*
Voco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *I call.*

1. (*a.*) m, s, t, mus, tis, nt; mĭni, ntur, mur; o, tis, t, nt; mus, mĭni, tis, m, r; ris, tur, t, mur. (*b.*) o, as, at, āmus, ātis, ant; ēris, ātur, imĭni, iuntur; ēre, eo, ĭmur, ītis, antur; is, iunt, ior, emĭni, ĭtis; īre, io, untur, eor, ētur; it, ēmur, āre.

2. (*a.*) Amo, amantur, amāris, amas, amat; vocor, vocātur, vocāmus, vocamĭni, vocātis, vocant, vocāmur. (*b.*) Monentur, monet, monēris, moneo, monēmus, monemĭni, monētis, mones; terrent, terreor, terrētur, terrēmur. (*c.*) Regant, regĭmur, regĭtis, regimĭni, regĕris, reguntur; dico, dicĭtur, dicĭmus, dicit. (*d.*) Audiuntur, audit, audior, audis, audīmur, audītus; punio, punimĭni, punīmus, punītur, puniunt, punīris.

3. (*a.*) They love, we are loved, I love, he is loved, he loves, thou lovest, ye are loved, we love, you love, I am loved, they love, thou art loved; I call, we call, he calls, you call, thou art called, thou callest, he is called. (*b.*) Thou art advised, they advise, we advise, he is advised, you advise, I am advised; we frighten, they are frightened, I frighten, we are frightened, ye are frightened, thou frightenest. (*c.*) He rules, they are ruled, I am ruled, we are ruled, thou rulest, ye are ruled; he tells, they tell, ye say, thou speakest, I say. (*d.*) Ye hear, thou art heard, he is heard, I hear, we are heard, I am heard, ye are heard; we punish, they punish, thou punishest, he punishes, ye punish.

V.

THE VERB.

Learn the endings of the Imperfect Tense, Indicative Mode, Active and Passive, in all the conjugations. [Table I. or Table II.]

1. Abas, ebantur, iebāris, ēbar, iēbat, abāmus, ebamĭni, ebant, iēbar, abātur, ebātis, iebāmur.

2. (*a.*) Amābam, amabantur, amabāris, amābas, amābat; vocābar, vocabātur, vocabāmus, vocabamĭni, vocabātis, vocābant, vocabāmur. (*b.*) Monēbat, monebantur, monēbam, monebāris, monebāmus, monebamĭni; terrēbant, terrēbar, terrebātur. (*c.*) Regebāmur, regebāre, regēbar, regebātis; dicēbat, dicebātur, dicebāmus, dicēbas. (*d.*) Audiebantur, audiēbar, audiebāmur, audiēbam, audiēbant, audiebamĭni.

3. (*a.*) They were loving, we were loved, I was loving, he was loved, thou wast loving, he was loving, ye were loved, we loved; ye called, they were called, I was called, thou wast called. (*b.*) Thou wast advised, they advised, he was advised, I was advised; we frightened, you frightened, ye were frightened. (*c.*) We ruled, I ruled, I was ruling, ye were ruled; it was said, you said, he was saying. (*d.*) Ye heard, thou wast heard, they were heard, she was heard; he was punished, we punished, ye were punished, they were punishing.

VI.

THE VERB.

Learn the endings of the Future Tense, Indicative Mode, Active and Passive in all the conjugations. [Table I. or Table II.]

1. (*a.*) Abo, ābis, ābit; ar, ēris, ētur, entur, ēre; ēbo, ebĭmur, iētis, abuntur, es, ient. (*b.*) iar, ebimĭni, ētis, iēris, iam, ēbor, ētur, et, iēmur. (*c.*) abĕris, ēmus, ebĭtis, ābunt, emĭni, am, ientur.

2. (*a.*) Āmābo, amabuntur, amabĕris, amābis, amābit; vocābor, vocabĭtur, vocabĭmus, vocabimĭni, vocabĭtis, vocābunt, vocabĭmur. (*b.*) Monēbit, monebuntur, monēbo, monebimĭni, monebĭtis; terrēbunt, terrēbor, terrebĭtur, terrebĭmus. (*c.*) Regent, regēmur, regēris, regemĭni, regēmus, regentur; dicam, dicētur, dicet, dicētis. (*d.*) Audientur, audiet, audiar, audies, audiēmur, audiētis; puniam, puniemĭni, puniēmus, puniētur, punient, puniēris.

3. (*a.*) They will love, we will be loved, I shall love, he will love, he shall be loved, thou wilt be loved, ye will love, we shall love; ye will be calling, they shall be called, I shall be called, thou wilt be called. (*b.*) Thou wilt advise, they will advise, he will be advised, I shall be advised; we will frighten, you shall frighten, you will be frightened. (*c.*) We will rule, they shall be ruled, we will be ruled; I shall say, it will be said, they will say, ye shall say. (*d.*) Ye will hear, thou wilt be

heard, they shall be heard, he shall be heard; we will punish, they will punish, thou shalt be punished, he will punish, ye shall be punished.

VII.

THE NOUN. FIRST DECLENSION.

Harkness. 29–35; 37–42, 1; 42, 4. [*Stem meth.* Omit 41; 42. Take Table IV. §§ 1–3.]

Andrews & S. 24–30; 33–38; 40, 41. (Omit fine print under §§ 28, 29, 30.)

Bullions & M. 24–45; 46, 47; 51; 53. [*Stem meth.* Omit 51; 53. Take Table IV. §§ 1–3.]

Allen. 5–9. [Table IV. §§ 1–3.]

VOCABULARY.

Filia, -æ, *daughter.*
Hora, -æ, *hour.*
Justitia, -æ, *justice.*
Luscinia, -æ, *nightingale.*
Sapientia, -æ, *wisdom.*

1. (*a.*) Justitiam, justitia. Lusciniæ, lusciniis, lusciniam, lusciniā. Sapientiæ, sapientia, sapientiā, sapientiam. (*b.*) Horārum, horas, hora, horis. Filias, filiæ, filiārum.

2. (*a.*) Of justice, to justice, by justice. Nightingales, of nightingales, thou nightingale. (*b.*) In wisdom, from wisdom, of wisdom. In the hour, from the hour, for the hours, with the hours, hour. Of the daughter, of the daughters.

VIII.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES AND WORDS.

Harkness. 343; 344; 345, I., II., III.; 346, I., II., III., IV.; 347–351; 352, I., II.; 353; 354–356.

Andrews & S. 200; 201, 1–7, 10–13; 202, 1, 2, 3, 4, Rem. 5; 203, 1, 2, 3, 4.

Bullions & M. 616–621; 709; 710.

Allen. 45.

FORM FOR PARSING. TABLE V. p. 157.

1. (*a.*) Sapientia regit. Filia monebātur. Luscinia terrētur. Justitia amabĭtur. Lusciniæ audiebantur. (*b.*) Justitiam amat. Lusciniam audient. Luscinias vocābant. Filiam puniēbat. Filias puniētis.

2. (*a.*) The daughter will be loved. The nightingales were terrified. Wisdom rules. The daughter was speaking. (*b.*) We loved justice. Ye shall hear the nightingales. Thou wast loving wisdom.

IX.

THE NOUN. SECOND DECLENSION.

Harkness. 45, 1, 2, 3, 1), 2), 3). [*Stem meth.* Omit Gr. Take Table IV. § 4.]

Andrews & S. 46–48.

Bullions & M. 58; 61–63. [*Stem meth.* Omit Gr. Take Table IV. § 4.]

Allen. 10. [Table IV. § 4.]

VOCABULARY.

Anĭmus, -i, *mind.*
Liber, libri, *book.*
Puer, -i, *boy.*
Regnum, -i, *kingdom.*

1. Anĭmi, anĭmos, anĭmo, anĭmis. Puĕris, puĕrum, puerōrum. Libros, libri, librum, liber. Regnum, regna, regnis, regnōrum.

2. Of a book, from books, O books. By boys, for boys, with a boy, the boy. To kingdoms, for a kingdom, kingdoms, thou kingdom! For a mind, a mind, minds, O mind, with a mind.

X.

SYNTAX.

VOCABULARY.

Bellum, -i, *war.*
Gero, -ĕre, gessi, gestum, *I carry on, wage.*
Incendo, -ĕre, -di, -sum, *I burn.*
Legātus, -i, *ambassador.*
Mitto, -ĕre, misi, missum, *I send.*
Oppĭdum, -i, *town.*
Respondeo, -ēre, -di, -sum, *I reply.*

1. (*a.*) Puer dicēbat. Regnum regebātur. Regna regentur. Regna regunt. Puĕros terrebĭmus. Bellum gerunt. (*b.*) Oppĭda incendunt. Legātos mittunt. Legātis respondet. Puer libros amat. Justitiæ reget regna.

2. (*a.*) The boys will be loved. We were loving the boys. They govern kingdoms. Ye shall wage war. (*b.*) Mind rules. The towns were burned. Ambassadors are sent. Wisdom shall rule the mind.

XI.

THE NOUN. THIRD DECLENSION.

Harkness. 48; 49; 52; 53; 50; 51; 54. [*Stem meth.* Omit Gr. Take Table IV. § 5, omitting "Special Remarks."]

Andrews & S. 5. Table of endings in 56; 57; 58; 62, 66. (Omit fine print in 62, 66.)

Bullions & M. 73–77; 86–88; 90–94; decline the words in 95–99. [*Stem meth.* Gr. 73–99, or Table IV. § 5, omitting "Special Remarks."]

Allen. 11, I., II., III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, IV. [Table IV. § 5.]

VOCABULARY.

Anĭmal, -is, *n.*, *animal.*
Civĭtas, -ātis, *f.*, *state.*
Corpus, -ŏris, *n.*, *body.*
Iter, itinĕris, *n.*, *journey.*
Mare, -is, *n.*, *sea.*
Miles, -ĭtis, *m.* & *f.*, *soldier.*
Rex, regis, *m.*, *king.*
Urbs, -is, *f.*, *city.*

1. (*a.*) Reges, regĭbus, regem. Civitātis, civitāte, civitātī. Animalium, animalia, animāli. Urbium, urbĭbus, urbe. (*b.*) Corpŏris, corpŏra, corpŏrum, corpus. Itinĕre, itinĕra, itinĕris, itinerĭbus. Milĭtes, milĭte, militĭbus. Maris, maria, mari, marĭbus.

2. (*a.*) In the-state, O state, a state. For the king, by the king, kings. O soldiers, to the soldier, with the soldiers. Cities, of a city, of cities, from a city, in a city. (*b.*) Body, of bodies, in the body. By a journey, of journeys, from a journey. The animals, of an animal, thou animal! By the sea, to a sea, in seas, of seas, seas.

XII.

SYNTAX.

VOCABULARY.

A *or* ab, *prep. with abl., from, by.*
Ad, *prep. with acc., to.*
Aquitania, -æ, *Aquitania*, proper name.
Conjuratio, -ōnis, *f., conspiracy.*
Consul, -is, *m., consul.*
Facio, -ĕre, feci, factum, *I make, do.*
Finis, -is, *m., end;* plural, *territory.*
Flumen, -ĭnis, *n., river.*
Garumna, -æ, *Garumna*, proper name.
In, *prep. with acc. and abl., in, into.*
Nobilĭtas, -ātis, *f., nobility.*
Pertineo, -ēre, -ui, -entum, *I extend.*

1. (*a.*) A rege vocabātur. Milĭtes audiebantur. Consŭles civitātem regunt. Consŭles a militĭbus terrebantur. (*b.*) In finĭbus bellum gerunt. Conjuratiōnem nobilitātis facit. Aquitania a Garumnā flumĭne ad montes pertĭnet.

2. (*a.*) They were frightened by the soldier.

The consuls will be punished. The consuls punish the soldiers. The cities are governed by a king. They called the ambassadors from the territories. (*b.*) They will send the soldiers into the river. The nobility carried on war in the territories. Aquitania extended from the mountains to the Garumna river.

XIII.

THE NOUN. FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

Harkness. 116, 1, 2; 119, 1, 2, 5; 120. [*Stem meth.* Omit Gr. Take Table IV. §§ 6, 7.]

Andrews & S. 87; 90.

Bullions & M. 137; 146; 147. [*Stem meth.* Omit Gr. Take Table IV. §§ 6, 7.

Allen. 12, 13. [Table IV. §§ 6, 7.]

VOCABULARY.

Acies, -ēi, *line of battle, battle array.*
Cantus, -us, *song.*
Cornu, -us, *horn.*
Dies, -ēi, *m. & f., day.*
Exercĭtus, -us, *army.*
Genu, -us, *knee.*
Res, -ĕi, *thing, affair.*
Spes, -ĕi, *hope.*

1. (*a.*) Exercĭtui, exercĭtus, exercitĭbus. Cantu, cantum, cantĭbus. Cornŭa, cornu, cornĭbus. Genu, genus, genŭum. (*b.*) Aciēi, aciem, acies. Rerum, rebus, rei. Dies, diēbus, die, diērum. Spes, spei, spem, spe.

2. (*a.*) With a song, by songs, for a song. Horn, of a horn, of horns. In armies, in the army, of armies. In the knee, to the knee, knees. (*b.*) Battle array, for line of battle. From the day, in the days, of a day, of the days. With the things, of a thing, in the thing. Hope, hopes, with hope, for hope.

XIV.

SYNTAX.

Collis, -is, *m.*, *hill.*
Hostis, -is, *m. & f.*, *enemy.*
Impĕtus, -us, *attack.*
Instruo, -ĕre, -uxi, -ctum, *I draw up, arrange.*
Jura, -æ, *Jura*, proper name.
Lacus, -us, *lake.*
Lemannus, -i, *Lemannus*, proper name.
Murus, -i, *wall.*
Perdūco, -ĕre, -uxi, -ctum, *I lead through, construct.*
Suscipio, -ĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum, *I undertake.*

1. (*a.*) Rex exercĭtum regēbat. Lusciniæ cantum amo. Exercĭtus a consŭle terrētur. Rem suscĭpit. Diem dicunt. (*b.*) In colle acĭem instruit. A lacu Lemanno ad Juram murum perdūcit. Hostis impĕtus milĭtes terrēbat.

2. (*a.*) An army in line of battle. The attack of the enemy. I advised the soldiers of the army. He drew up the army in battle array. I will undertake the journey. (*b.*) Jura extends to lake Lemannus. The songs of the nightingale were

heard in the city. The ambassadors replied to the soldiers of the army.

XV.

THE ADJECTIVE. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Harkness. 146–148.
Andrews & S. 105; 106. (Omit fine print.)
Bullions & M. 189, 190.
Allen. 16, I.

GENERAL VOCABULARY, pp. 179–211.

1. (*a.*) Puer bonus. Bonis puĕris. Bonōrum puerōrum. Anĭmi magni. Anĭmo magno. Anĭmum magnum. Sapientia vera. Sapientiā verā. Sapientiæ veræ. Puer pulcher. Urbs pulchra. (*b.*) Urbi pulchræ. Urbĭbus pulchris. Urbes pulchræ. Urbes pulchras. Regnum prospĕrum. Regno prospĕro. Regnōrum prosperōrum. Regnum bonum. Res prospĕra. Rebus prospĕris. Horæ prospĕræ.

2. (*a.*) A good song. The good songs. For a good song. For good songs. Of the good song. Of good songs. A great mind. Of great minds. In great minds. Beautiful boys. For beautiful boys. (*b.*) Of a beautiful city. In a beautiful city. Of beautiful cities. Prosperous kingdoms. Of the prosperous kingdom. With prosperous kingdoms In prosperous affairs. For a prosperous affair.

XVI.

SYNTAX.

1. Privāta ædificia incendunt. Relĭquos Gallos virtūte præcēdunt. Quotidiānis prœliis contendunt. Aliēno loco prœlium committunt. In Italiam magnis itinerĭbus contendit. Divitiăcus multis cum lacrĭmis Cæsărem obsĕcrat.

2. True justice governed the kingdom. The soldiers will burn the great towns. Ye love the beautiful songs of the nightingales. The enemy made the attack in an unfavorable place. The king of the prosperous state will send ambassadors into Italy. The consuls with many tears besought the soldiers.

XVII.

THE ADJECTIVE. THIRD DECLENSION.

Harkness. 150–153.
Andrews & S. 108–111. (Omit fine print.)
Bullions & M. 193; 196–198. (Omit fine print under 196.)
Allen. 16, II.

1. (*a.*) Leges acres. Lex acris. Legĭbus acrĭbus. Milĭti forti. Milĭtem fortem. Miles audax. Lex prudens. Legum prudentium. Regem prudentem. Omnes civitātes. Omni civitāte. (*b.*) Opus omne. Opĕra omnia. Operĭbus omnĭbus. Homo sapiens. Homĭnum sapientium. Iter breve. Itin-

ĕra brevia. Rex celĕber. Regĭbus celebrĭbus. Regis celĕbris. Regem celĕbrem.

2. (*a.*) A wise king. Of wise kings. By a wise king. For wise kings. Brave men. Of a brave man. With brave men. To a brave man. Of a severe law. A severe law. Of severe laws. (*b.*) All journeys. Every journey. In every journey. Of famous states. For a famous state. From a famous state. Of a famous work. Famous works. O famous work! In famous works.

XVIII.

SYNTAX.

1. (*a.*) Omne frumentum combūrunt. In Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genēvam pervēnit: Recentium injuriārum memoriam deponĕre. (*b.*) Legatiōnis Namēius et Verudoctius princĭpem locum obtinēbant. Provincia homĭnes bellicōsos, popŭli Romāni inimīcos, locis patentĭbus finitĭmos habēbit.

2. (*a.*) The bold attack frightened the armies. Ye will love all virtues. The brave soldiers heard the prudent king. Wise laws are made by the consuls. (*b.*) The Roman people have hostile men as neighbors. Bold soldiers love exposed places. Nameius hastened into the farther province. Warlike men hold the chief places.

XIX.

THE ADJECTIVE: COMPARISON; NUMERALS.

Harkness. 160–165; 170; 171–173; 175–179.
Andrews & S. 122, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; 124, 1, 2, 3; 125, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5; 127, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5; 117, I.; 118, 1, 2, 6; 119.
Bullions & M. 214–222; 227–229; 201–204; 206, 207.
Allen. 17, I., II., III., V., 18.

1. (*a.*) Vir illustrissĭmus. Lex acrior. Rex prudentissĭmus. Mons altus. Mons altior. Consilium prudentius. Ascensus facillĭmus. Ascensui facillĭmo. Viro sapientissĭmo. Iter brevius. Itinĕrum brevium. (*b.*) Locus inferior. Loco inferiōri. Viri optĭmi. Pessĭmo puero. Puer pessĭme! Numĕrus major. Numĕris majorĭbus. Locis superiorĭbus. Minĭma altitūdo. (*c.*) Unus liber. Unīus libri. Viro uni. Montes tres. Trium mensium. Duōbus locis. Unā horā. Duos reges.

2. (*a.*) To a very high mountain. From higher mountains. Of the highest mountain. To the most prudent men. Thou more prudent man! The easier journeys. By the easiest ascent. (*b.*) In lower places. For the best men. Better men. The best work. A greater design. Of the greater designs. With the greatest number. In the higher town. Of the least height. (*c.*) By one king. With one law. Of one state. For one consul. With three soldiers. Of two hours. Two designs. Three wars.

XX.

SYNTAX.

1. (*a.*) Ab extrēmis Galliæ finĭbus. Maxĭmum numĕrum jumentorum et carrōrum coëmĕre. Apud Helvetios nobilissĭmus et ditissĭmus Orgetŏrix. Per tres potentissĭmos ac firmissĭmos popŭlos. (*b.*) Pertĭnent ad inferiōrem partem flumĭnis Rheni. Oppĭda omnia, numĕro ad duodĕcim, vicos ad quadringentos, relĭqua privāta ædificia incendunt.

2. Orgetorix, a richer man. They called the bravest soldiers. The greatest cities, about ten in number, were burned. The braver soldiers advised the very difficult ascent. The worst armies will be governed by the best men.

XXI.

THE ADVERB. THE PRONOUN.

Harkness. 302–305; 182–191. (Omit all of the fine print.)

Andrews & S. 190; 194; 132–139. (Omit fine print, except under 194.)

Bullions & M. 460–463; 230–232; 236; 239; 243; 245; 246; 249; 250; 251; 253; 254.

Allen. 41, I.; 19, I., II.; 20, I.; 21.

1. (*a.*) Magis arduus. Minus facĭle. Minĭme sapiens. Mihi, tibi, sibi. Ad nos, contra vos. Ad te, a me, a vobis. Vos, nos, se. Mea filia, meæ filiæ. Consilium tuum. De finĭbus suis. (*b.*) Eo

tempŏre. Ejus voluntāte. Cum his quinque legionĭbus. Ipsi magistrātus. Summa in se voluntas. Illi milĭtes. Animalia eădem. Mare idem. Hæc oppĭda. Bellum istud.

2. (*a.*) Our book, his book, my book. Of myself, to you, in himself. To themselves, of himself. To me, to us. By my plans. In your city. Of their soldiers. This work. For this war. Of that place (*ille*). In those places (*is*). (*b.*) The man himself. On the same day. The same laws. These legions. Those legions. His legions. The legions themselves. Her legions. Our legions. The same legions.

XXII.

SYNTAX.

1. (*a.*) Quis nos terrēbit? Ipse eădem levĭter dicēbat. Id hōc facilius eis persuadet. Unam [partem] incŏlunt Belgæ, aliam [partem] Aquitāni, tertiam [ii], qui ipsōrum linguā Celtæ, nostra [linguā] Galli appellantur. (*b.*) Proxĭmi Germānis, qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Fere quotidiānis prœliis cum Germānis contendunt, quum aut suis finĭbus eos prohĭbent, aut ipsi in eōrum finĭbus bellum gerunt.

2. Who said this? Ye shall hear the same things. Those who inhabit one part of Gaul were called Belgians. The Germans, with whom wars are waged, live across the Rhine. They drove the

Germans from their territories or waged war in the territories of the Germans.

XXIII.

THE IRREGULAR VERB: SUM, ESSE, FUI.

Harkness. 204.
Andrews & S. 153.
Bullions & M. 277.
Allen. 29, I.

1. (*a.*) Sumus, erĭtis, erat, es. Fuērunt, fuĕras, fuĕrit, fuisti, fuĕro. Sim, esses, sitis, essent. (*b.*) Fuerīmus, fuĕris, fuissem, fuissētis, fuerītis, fuissent. Estōte, esto, sunto, futūrus esse, fuisse.

2. (*a.*) You are, he is, they are. I was, you were, we were. Thou wilt be, they will be, we shall be. I have been, you have been, thou hadst been, he has been, we had been. You will have been, we shall have been. (*b.*) They might have been, thou mightst have been. I may have been, ye may have been. You might be, we may be, he might be. I might be, thou mayst be, they may be. About to be, to be, they shall be, be thou, ye shall be.

XXIV.

SYNTAX.

1. Erant omnīno itinĕra duo. Extrēmum oppĭdum Allobrŏgum est Genēva. Helvetiis erat

amīcus. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissĭmus et ditissĭmus fuit Orgetŏrix.

2. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodănum primi. Quum ea ita sint. Eădem secrēto ab aliis quærit: repĕrit esse vera. A cultu atque humanitāte provinciæ longissĭme absunt.

XXV.

REGULAR VERBS. SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION; PRESENT SYSTEM.

Harkness. 240–242. [*Stem meth.* Table II. § 1, I.–III.; § 6. Omit Gr.]
Andrews & S. 149–151. Table II. § 1, III.
Bullions & M. 271–276; 281. Table II. § 1, III.
Allen. 30; 33. Table II. § 1, III.

Learn the endings of the Present Subjunctive, Active and Passive, in all the conjugations. Table I. § 2 [or Table II. § 2].

1. Emus; iant, as. Eat, em, eātur. Iāris, eamĭni, ātis. Iam, atur, er. Entur, ēris, eas, et.

2. (*a.*) Amem, amentur, ames, amet; vocer, vocemĭni, vocent, vocēmur. (*b.*) Moneam, moneāris, moneamĭni, monear; terreātur, terreat, terreāmur, terreātis, terreantur, terreāmus, terreāre. (*c.*) Regant, regāmur, regāris, regamĭni, regāmus, regantur; dicam, dicātis, dicātur, dicat. (*d.*) Audiantur, audiat, audiar, audiātis; puniam, puniamĭni, puniāmus, puniātur, puniant, puniāris.

3. (*a.*) He may be loved, we may love, you may

be loved, he can love. (*b.*) We may be advised, they may advise, he may be advised; you can frighten, we can be frightened, he may frighten. (*c.*) Ye may be ruled, he may be ruled, we may be ruled; we can say, ye can say. (*d.*) They may be heard, he may hear, thou mayst be heard; we may be punished, ye may punish, ye may be punished, they may punish.

XXVI.

REGULAR VERBS. PRESENT SYSTEM.

Learn the endings of the Imperfect Subjunctive, Active and Passive, in all the conjugations. Table I. § 2 [or Table II. § 2].

1. Erētis, ēres, ĕrer, aret. Eremĭni, erēmus, irēmur, erēris, ĕrent. Ires, ērent, arentur.

2. (*a.*) Amāres, amārer, amāret; vocaremĭni, vocārem, vocarēis, vocarĕmus. (*b.*) Monerēmur, monērem, monerēris; terrērer, terrēret, terrerētis, terrerētur, terreremĭni. (*c.*) Regĕrer, regĕrent, regerētur, regerēmur; dicĕrem, dicerētis, dicĕret. (*d.*) Audīrem, audĭrentur; punirēmus, punīrer, punīret.

3. (*a.*) They might love, ye could be loved; we should judge, he would be judged. (*b.*) Thou mightst advise, he might advise; they should terrify, he might be terrified, ye should be terrified. (*c.*) We could rule, ye should rule, we might be ruled; it might be said, he might say. (*d.*) Thou couldst

hear, ye should be heard; thou shouldst be punished, they could punish.

XXVII.

SYNTAX. USE OF TENSES.

Harkness. 466; 467, I., II., III.; 468; 469, I., II.; 470, 1, 2; 476–480.
Andrews & S. 144–145; 260, I., II. (1), (2); Rem. 6.
Bullions & M. 1079–1084; 1087–1091; 1161–1164; 1172.
Allen. 27, I., II.

1. Qui dicĕrent. Si quid accĭdat Romānis. Neque obsidĭbus tenerētur. Quum ab his quærĕret, quæ civitātes quantæque in armis essent. De omnĭbus obsidĭbus qui apud eum sint, gravissĭmum supplicium sumat.

2. Dum in Santŏnes Helvetii pervenīrent. Diem dicunt, quā die ad ripam Rhodăni omnes conveniant. Monet, ut in relĭquum tempus omnes suspiciōnes vitet. Relĭquis tamen fugæ facultas darētur. Quare ne committĕret, ut is locus ex calamitāte popŭli Romāni et interneciōne exercĭtus nomen capĕret.

XXVIII.

REGULAR VERBS. PRESENT SYSTEM.

Learn the endings of the Present and Future Imperative, Active and Passive; the Present Infinitive; the Gerund; the Present Participle; the Future Passive Participle, in all the conjugations. Table I. § 2 [or Table II. § 2].

1. Unto, ate, imĭni, etor, entor, eri, ire. Endus, etōte, ĭto, e, antor, ēre, i, ari, iendus, ens, iens.

2. (*a.*) Amāto, amamĭni; vocāre; monēte, monetōte; terrētor; rege, regunto, regĭto, regĭtor. (*b.*) Audīte, audimĭni, auditōte, audiuntor; monēri; vocandus; monendī; audiens; regi; audīri.

3. (*a.*) Ye shall love, love ye; he shall call, they shall be called, thou shalt be called; advise thou, he shall advise, be ye advised; he shall be terrified; rule ye, they shall rule, ye shall rule, be ye ruled. (*b.*) Hear thou, they shall hear; be thou punished, thou shalt be punished, to punish; to be ruled; to be terrified; to advise, to be advised; loving, of loving; by punishing; for hearing.

XXIX.

SYNTAX.

Harkness. 534; 540; 541; 559; 560; 562; 571–576.

Andrews & S. 267 (1), (2), (3), Rem. 2; 268, 2; 269 (a), (b); 275, I. Rem. 1, 2, 3, II.; 274, 1, 2, note, Rem. 8 (a), Rem. 9.

Bullions & M. 1110–1114; 1126; 1127; 265 (Gerund); 1304; 1319–1324; 1343; 1344; 1350.

Allen. 24, III., IV.; 72; 73.

1. Sementes quàm maxĭmas facĕre. Pontem, qui erat ad Genēvam, jubet rescindi. Summam in spem regni per Helvetios obtinendi venīre. Divitiăcum ad se vocāri jubet. Cognoscĭte hæc ab ipsis, qui ex ipsā cæde fugērunt.

2. Præstāte eandem nobis ducĭbus virtutem; atque illum [imperatōrĕm] adesse et hæc coram cernĕre, existimāte. Rogat, finem orandi faciat. Reperiēbat etiam in quærendo Cæsar. Hæc quum plurĭbus verbis flens a Cæsăre petĕret.

XXX.

REGULAR VERBS. THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

Learn the endings of the Perfect System; Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect Indicative, Active: Perfect, Pluperfect Subjunctive, Active; Perfect Infinitive, Active. Table I. § 3 [or Table II. § 3, 5].

1. Isti, erunt, erātis, erīmus, ero, erit, erat. Imus, it, erim, erītis, isses, issēmus, eram, issētis, isse.

2. (*a.*) Amāvi, monuērunt, vocavĕrit, amavissem, dixisti, punīvit, rexerāmus, terruĕrint, audiverĭtis, dixissētis. (*b.*) Amaverātis, monuistis, rexĭmus, terruĕram, dixĕras, audivĕro, punivĕrant, monuĕris, rexerīmus, audivĕrim, amavisset, rexissēmus, audivisse.

3. (*a.*) To have loved, I had advised, he will have ruled. I may have said, ye had heard, he might have punished. He had loved, I shall have advised, thou wilt have heard. He has said, they should have ruled, we may have frightened. We shall have said, we had advised, they may have punished. (*b.*) They will have loved, I have heard, thou hadst said. We have advised, thou couldst

have punished, I might have ruled. They had loved. Ye will have ruled, you may have heard. We would have advised, they have said, he may have frightened, you have ruled.

XXXI.

SYNTAX.

Harkness. 241, II.; 471, I., II.; 472; 473; 478; 542.
Andrews & S. 151, 2; 259 (2), (a), (b), (c), (3); 260, II. (3), (4); 268, 2, Rem. 1 (a).
Bullions & M. 274; 1092; 1093; 1095; 1096; 1098; 1099; 1162; 1163; 1126; 1128.
Allen. 27, III., IV., V., VI.

1. Qui trans Rhenum incoluĕrant. Ob eas causas ei munitiōni, quam fecĕrat, Titum Labiēnum legātum præfēcit. Id flumen transduxisse. Ubi Cæsar constituisset. Quod Helvetii fecĕrint. Dum milĭtes, quos imperavĕrat, convenīrent. Ubi ea dies, quam constituĕrat cum legātis, venit et legāti ad eum revertērunt.

2. Qualis esset natūra montis et qualis in circuĭtu ascensus, qui cognoscĕrent, misit. Propterea quŏd Ariovistus, rex Germanōrum, in eorum finĭbus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri Sequăni, qui esset optĭmus totīus Galliæ, occupavisset.

XXXII.

REGULAR VERBS. THE SUPINE SYSTEM.

Learn the inflections of the Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect Indicative, Passive; Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, Passive; Perfect Infinitive, Passive; Future Infinitive, Active and Passive; the Supines, Perfect and Future Active Participles. Table I. § 4 [or Table II. § 4, 5].

1. Monĭtus es, recti estis, audītus erat. Audīti erĭmus, terrĭtus eram, punīti erāmus. Amātus ero, amātus sis, monĭti simus. Audītus eris, amāti essēmus, rectus esse. Amatūrus esse, vocātum iri, auditūrus. Terrĭtum, amātu.

2. He will have been loved, I have been called, thou hadst been advised. We have been ruled. I may have been frightened, thou couldst have been loved. You may have been punished, he may have been governed, ye might have been heard. To have been ruled, to be about to be heard, to be loved, called.

XXXIII.

SYNTAX.

Harkness. 241, III.; 543; 567; 568; 569, 1; 570, 2.

Andrews & S. 151, 1, 2, 3 (a), (b); 268, Rem. 4 (a), (b); 276, I., II., III.

Bullions & M. 1126–1129; 1133; 330; 1355–1359; 1360; 1362; 1365.

Allen. 25; 30; 74.

1. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt. Sese cum iis pacem esse factūrum. Cæsări quum id nuntiātum esset. Eò, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venērunt. Eo concilio dimisso, iīdem princĭpes civitātum, qui antè fuĕrant ad Cæsărem, revertērunt. Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit, ... "Æduos sibi, quoniam belli fortūnam tentassent et armis superāti essent, stipendiarios esse factos."

XXXIV.

REVIEW OF VERBS. INFLECTIONS THROUGH ALL THE MODES.

Harkness. 205–215; 216–220.
Andrews & S. 155–160.
Bullions & M. 282; 283; 288; 289; 292; 293; 294–297; 300; 301. Observe and learn synopsis of conjugations.
Allen. 28; 31; 32.

1. Primā luce, quum summus mons a Tito Labiēno tenerētur, ipse ab hostium castris non longiùs mille et quingentis passĭbus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captīvis compĕrit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēni cognĭtus esset, Considius, equo admisso, ad eum accurrit.

2. Dum hæc in colloquio geruntur, Cæsări nuntiātum est, equĭtes Ariovisti propius tumŭlum accedĕre et ad nostros adequitāre, lapĭdes telăque in nostros conjicĕre. Cæsar loquendi finem fecit, seque ad suos recēpit, suisque imperāvit, ne quod omnīno telum in hostes rejicĕrent.

XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS. PERIPHRASTIC. CONJUNCTIONS.

Harkness. 221–226; 227–233; 308–311.
Andrews & S. 161; 162, 14, 15; 198, I., II.
Bullions & M. 304–310; 312; 313; 328; 329; 488–505.
Allen. 35; 40.

1. Eo die, quo consuērat intervallo, hostes sequĭtur. Nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiăci anĭmum offendĕret, verebātur. Propterea quòd ipse suæ civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset. Neque [sibi] sine causā timendum [esse] putāret. Obsĭdes inter eos dandos curasset.

2. Si Helvetios superavĕrint, Romāni, unà cum relĭquā Galliā, Æduis libertātem sint ereptūri. Nisi si quid in Cæsăre populōque Romāno sit auxilii, omnĭbus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecĕrint, ut domo emĭgrent.

XXXVI.

FORMATION OF PARTS OF REGULAR VERBS.

Harkness. 246–260. (Omit fine print from 249–257, inclusive.)
Andrews & S. 163–164; 167; 171, 1, 2, 3, 4; 173; 175.
Bullions & M. 341–369.
Allen. 30; 34.

1. Postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent; idem Cæsar facit, equitātumque omnem ad numĕrum

quattŭor millium, quem ex omni provinciā et Æduis atque eōrum sociis coactum ĥabēbat, præmittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissĭmum agmen insecūti, aliēno loco cum equitātu Helvetiōrum prœlium committunt et pauci de nostris cadunt.

2. Hāc oratiōne adducti, inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant. Quòd Gallia sub septentrionĭbus, ut antè dictum est, posĭta est. De tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum summum jugum montis ascendĕre jubet. Eò postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsĭdes, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Id ne acciděret magnopĕre præcavendum sibi Cæsar existimābat.

XXXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Harkness. 287–296. (Omit fine print under *edo, volo.*)
Andrews & S. 154; 178–182. (Omit the *notes* except under 182.)
Bullions & M. 410–414; 417–429; 431.
Allen. 29, II., III., IV.; 37.

1. Erant omnīno itinĕra duo, quibus itinerĭbus domo exire possent. His rebus fiēbat, ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facĭlè finitĭmis bellum inferre possent. Quod ubi Cæsar resciit, quorum per fines iĕrant, his, utì conquirĕrent et reducĕrent, si sibi purgāti esse vellent, imperāvit.

2. Si pacem popŭlus Romānus cum Helvetiis

facĕret, in eam partem itūros atque ibi futūros Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituisset atque esse voluisset. Si Æduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eōrum intulĕrint, item si Allobrogĭbus satisfaciant. Cæsar, hac oratiōne Lisci, Dumnorĭgem, Divitiăci fratrem, designāri sentiēbat: sed quòd, plurĭbus præsentĭbus, eas res jactāri nolēbat, celerĭter concilium dimittit, Liscum retĭnet.

XXXVIII.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Harkness. 297, I., II.; 298–301.
Andrews & S. 183 (1), (2), 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; 184, 1, 2, 3, Rems. 1, 2, 3.
Bullions & M. 434–437; 441–445; 451–458.
Allen. 38; 39.

1. Odisse etiam suo nomĭne Cæsărem et Romānos. Nostros a novissĭmo agmĭne insĕqui ac lacessĕre cœpērunt. "Desilīte," inquit, "commilitōnes, nisi vultis aquĭlam hostĭbus prodĕre." Ubi se diutiùs duci intellexit et diem instāre, quo die frumentum militĭbus metīri oportēret.

2. Legātos ad eum mittunt, nobilissĭmos civitātis, qui dicĕrent, "sibi esse in anĭmo, sine ullo maleficio, iter per provinciam facĕre, propterea quòd aliud iter habērent nullum: rogāre, ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facĕre liceat."

PART II.

CAII JULII CÆSARIS COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER I.

I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Harkness. 343–361. (Omit fine print.)
Andrews & S. 200–203. (Omit fine print.) Consult 281.
Bullions & M. 616–620; 1399–1412. Consult 1413.
Allen.

1. Gallia est omnis divīsa in partes tres, quarum unam incŏlunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam, qui ipsōrum linguā Celtæ, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hi omnes linguā, institūtis, legĭbus inter se diffĕrunt. Gallos ab Aquitānis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrŏna et Sequăna divĭdit. 2. Horum omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgæ, propterea quòd a cultu atque humanitāte provinciæ longissimè absunt, minimèque ad eos mercatōres sæpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos anĭmos pertĭnent, important: proximīque sunt Germānis, qui trans Rhēnum incŏlunt, quibuscum continenter

bellum gerunt: quā de causā Helvetii quòque relĭquos Gallos virtūte præcēdunt, quòd fere quotidianis prœliis Germānis contendunt, quum aut suis finĭbus eos prohĭbent, aut ipsi in eōrum finĭbus bellum gerunt. 3. Eōrum una pars, quam Gallos obtinēre dictum est, initium capit a flumĭne Rhodăno; continētur Garumnā flumine, Oceăno, finĭbus Belgārum; attingit etiam, ab Sequănis et Helvetiis, flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriōnes. 4. Belgæ ab extrēmis Galliæ finĭbus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flumĭnis Rheni; spectant in septentriōnes et orientem solem. Aquitania, a Garumnā flumĭne ad Pyrenæos montes et eam partem Oceăni, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertĭnet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentriōnes.

II.

ANALYSIS. RULES OF SYNTAX.

Harkness. 591, R. I.–XX.
Andrews & S. Table III. p. 149, R. I.–XXV.
Bullions & M. 622–809, R. I.–XXVII. [Learn the rules only.]
Allen. 75, R. I.–VIII.

1. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissĭmus et ditissĭmus fuit Orgetŏrix. Is, Marco Messālā et Marco Pisōne consulĭbus, regni cupiditāte inductus, conjuratiōnem nobilitātis fecit; et civitāti persuāsit, ut de finĭbus suis cum omnĭbus copiis exīrent: perfacile

esse, quum virtūte omnĭbus præstārent, totĭus Galliæ imperio potīri. 2. Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quòd undĭque loci natūrā Helvetii continentur: unā ex parte, flumĭne Rheno, latissĭmo atque altissĭmo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germānis divĭdit; altĕrā ex parte, monte Jurā altissĭmo, qui est inter Sequănos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemanno, et flumĭne Rhodăno, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis divĭdit. 3. His rebus fiēbat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facĭle finitĭmis bellum inferre possent: quā de causā, homĭnes bellandi cupĭdi magno dolōre afficiebantur. Pro multitudĭne autem homĭnum, et pro gloriā belli atque fortitudĭnis, angustos se fines habēre arbitrabantur, qui in longitudĭnem millia passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudĭnem centum et octoginta patēbant.

III.

ANALYSIS. RULES OF SYNTAX.

Harkness. 591, R. XXI.–XXXVII.
Andrews & S. Table III. R. XXVI.–LIV.
Bullions & M. 818–1148, R. XXVIII.–LXXXIII.
Allen. I.–XVII.

1. His rebus adducti, et auctoritāte Orgetorĭgis permōti, constituērunt ea, quæ ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre; jumentōrum et carrōrum quàm maxĭmum numĕrum coëmĕre; sementes quàm maxĭmas facĕre, ut in itinĕre copia frumenti

suppetĕret; cum proxĭmis civitatĭbus pacem et amicitiam confirmāre. Ad eas res conficiendas, biennium sibi satis esse duxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lege confirmant. 2. Ad eas res conficiendas, Orgetŏrix deligĭtur. Is sibi legatiōnem ad civitātes suscēpit. In eo itinĕre persuādet Castĭco, Catamantalĕdis filio, Sequăno, cujus pater regnum in Sequănis multos annos obtinuĕrat, et a senātu popŭli Romāni, amīcus appellātus erat, ut regnum in civitāte suā occupāret, quod pater antè habuĕrat; itemque Dumnorĭgi Æduo, fratri Divitiăci, qui eo tempŏre principātum in civitāte obtinēbat, ac maxĭme plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conarētur, persuādet, eīque filiam suam in matrimonium dat. 3. Perfacĭle factu esse, illis probat, conāta perficĕre, propterea quòd ipse suæ civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: non esse dubium quin totīus Galliæ plurĭmùm Helvetii possent: se, suis copiis suōque exercĭtu illis regna conciliatūrum confirmat. Hac oratiōne adducti, inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et, regno occupāto, per tres potentissĭmos ac firmissĭmos popŭlos totīus Galliæ sese potīri posse sperant.

IV.

ANALYSIS. RULES OF SYNTAX.

Harkness. 591, R. XXXVIII.–LI.
Andrews & S. Table III. R. LV.–LXXXI.
Bullions & M. 1164–1369, R. LXXXIV.–CVIII.
Allen. 58, II., 1–5.

1. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiāta. Morĭbus suis Orgetorĭgem ex vincŭlis causam dicĕre coëgērunt: damnatum, pœnam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremarētur. Die constitūtā causæ dictiōnis, Orgetŏrix ad judicium omnem suam familiam ad hominum millia decem undĭque coëgit, et omnes clientes obæratosque suos, quorum magnum numĕrum habēbat, eòdem conduxit: per eos, ne causam dicĕret, se eripuit. 2. Quum civĭtas, ob eam rem incitāta, armis jus suum exsĕqui conarētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātus cogĕrent, Orgetŏrix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem conscivĕrit.

V.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES AND WORDS.

1. Post ejus mortem, nihĭlo minùs Helvetii id, quod constituĕrant, facĕre conantur, ut e finĭbus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem parātos esse arbitrāti sunt, oppĭda sua omnia numĕro ad duodĕ-

cim, vicos ad quadringentos, relĭqua privāta ædificia incendunt; frumentum omne, præterquam quod secum portatūri erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spe sublātā, paratiōres, ad omnia perĭcŭla subeunda, essent: trium mensium molĭta cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. 2. Persuādent Raurăcis et Tulingis et Latobrīgis, finitĭmis, utì, eōdem usi consilio, oppĭdis suis vicisque exustis, unà cum iis proficiscantur: Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluĕrant, et in agrum Norĭcum transiĕrant, Norēiamque oppugnārant, receptos ad se, socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI.

CONNECTION OF TENSES.

Harkness. 480–482.
Andrews & S. 258.
Bullions & M. 1161–1173.
Allen. 57.

1. Erant omnīno itinĕra duo, quibus itinerĭbus domo exīre possent: unum per Sequănos, angustum et difficĭle, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodănum, vix quà singŭli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissĭmus impendēbat, ut facĭle perpaūci prohibēre possent: altĕrum per provinciam nostram, multò facilius atque expeditius, propterea quòd inter fines Helvetiōrum et Allobrŏgum, qui nuper pacāti erant, Rhodănus fluit, isque nonnullis

locis vado transĭtur. 2. Extrēmum oppĭdum Allobrŏgum est, proximumque Helvetiōrum finĭbus, Genēva. Ex eo oppĭdo, pons ad Helvetios pertĭnet. Allobrogĭbus sese vel persuasūros, quòd nondum bono anĭmo in popŭlum Romānum viderentur, existimābant; vel vi coactūros, ut per suos fines eos ire-paterentur. Omnĭbus rebus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, quā die ad ripam Rhodăni omnes conveniant: is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprīles, Lucio Pisōne, Aulo Gabinio, consulĭbus.

VII.

CONNECTION OF TENSES.

1. Cæsări quum id nuntiātum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facĕre conāri, matūrat ab urbe proficisci; et, quàm maxĭmis potest itinerĭbus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit, et ad Genēvam pervēnit; provinciæ toti quàm maxĭmum potest milĭtum numĕrum impĕrat (erat omnīno in Galliā ulteriōre legio una): pontem, qui erat ad Genēvam, jubet rescindi. 2. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt, legātos ad eum mittunt, nobilissĭmos civitātis; cujus legatiōnis Namēius et Verudoctius princĭpem locum obtinēbant, qui dicĕrent, "sibi esse in anĭmo, sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facĕre, propterea quòd aliud iter habērent nullum: rogāre, ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facĕre

liceat." 3. Cæsar, quòd memoriā tenēbat, Lucium Cassium consŭlem occīsum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putābat: neque homĭnes inimīco anĭmo, datā facultāte per provinciam itinĕris faciendi, temperatūros ab injuriā et maleficio existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedĕre posset, dum milĭtes, quos imperavĕrat, convenīrent, legātis respondit, "diem se ad deliberandum sumptūrum; si quid vellent, ad Idus Aprīles reverterentur."

VIII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Harkness. 483–485; 486, I., II., III., 1, 2, 4, 5; 487; 488, I., II., 2, 3, 4.

Andrews & S. 260, I., II., 1–4, Rem. 6, (a); Rem. 7, (1), (2), (3).

Bullions & M. 1173–1178; 1180–1183; 1193–1196; 1200; 1201.

Allen. 68.

1. Interea eā legiōne, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provinciā convenĕrant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodănum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis divĭdit, millia passuum decem novem murum, in altitudĭnem pedum sedĕcim, fossamque perdūcit. Eo opĕre perfecto, præsidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quò facilius, si, se invīto, transīre conarentur, prohibēre possit. 2. Ubi ea dies, quam con-

stituĕrat cum legātis, venit, et legāti ad eum revertērunt, negat "se, more et exemplo populi Romani, posse iter ulli per provinciam dăre;" et, "si vim facĕre conentur, prohibitūrum" ostendit. Helvetii, eā spe dejecti, navĭbus junctis, ratĭbusque complurĭbus factis, alii, vadis Rhodăni, quà minĭma altitūdo flumĭnis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, sæpius noctu, si perrumpĕre possent, conāti, opĕris munitiōne et milĭtum concursu et telis repulsi, hōc conātu destitērunt.

IX.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Harkness. 489, I., II.; 490; 491; 492, 1, 2, 3, 4; 494; 495, 1, 2, 3; 497; 498; 499; 500; 501, I., II., III., IV.

Andrews & S. 262, Rem. 1–10 (omit fine print); 263 1, 2, (1), 3, 4, 5, Rem. 1, 2.

Bullions & M. 1205–1208; 1212; 1214; 1218–1220; 1222; 1223; 1224; 1226; 1227.

Allen. 64, 65.

1. Relinquebātur una per Sequănos via, quā, Sequănis invītis, propter angustias ire non potĕrant. His quum suā sponte persuadēre non possent, legātos ad Dumnorĭgem Æduum mittunt, ut, eo deprecatōre, a Sequănis impetrārent. Dumnŏrix gratiā et largitione apud Sequănos plurimùm potĕrat, et Helvetiis erat amīcus, quòd ex eā civitāte Orgetorĭgis filiam in matrimonium duxĕrat; et, cupiditāte regni adductus, novis rebus studēbat,

et quàm plurĭmas civitātes suo [sibi] beneficio habēre obstrictas volēbat. 2. Ităque rem suscĭpit, et a Sequănis impĕtrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque utì inter sese dent, perfĭcit: Sequăni, ne itinĕre Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuriā transeant.

X.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Harkness. 502; 503, I., II., III.; 504; 505; 506; 507; 508; 509; 510; 511, I., II.; 512; 513; 514; 515, I., II., III.; 516, I., II., III.

Andrews & S. 264, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12; 261, 1, 2, Rem. 1, 2.

Bullions & M. 1259–1262; 1265–1272; 1281–1284; 1290.

Allen. 59–61.

1. Cæsări renuntiātur, Helvetiis esse in anĭmo per agrum Sequanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santŏnum fines facĕre, qui non longè a Tolosatium finĭbus absunt, quæ civĭtas est in provinciā. Id si fiĕret, intelligēbat magno cum pericŭlo provinciæ futūrum, ut homĭnes bellicōsos, popŭli Romāni inimīcos, locis patentĭbus maximèque frumentariis finitĭmos, habēret. 2. Ob eas causas ei munitiōni, quam fecĕrat, Titum Labiēnum, legātum, præfēcit: ipse in Italiam magnis itinerĭbus contendit, duasque ibi legiōnes conscrībit, et tres, quæ circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernis edūcit, et, quà proxĭmum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes

erat, cum his quinque legionĭbus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes et Graiocĕli et Caturĭges, locis superiorĭbus occupātis, itinĕre exercĭtŭm prohibēre conantur. 3. Complurĭbus his prœliis pulsis, ab Ocĕlo quod est citeriōris provinciæ extrēmum, infines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris provinciæ die septĭmo pervēnit: inde in Allobrŏgum fines; ab Allobrogĭbus, in Segusiānos exercĭtum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodănum primi.

XI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Harkness. 517, I., II.; 518, I., II., 1; 519; 520, I., II.; 521, I., II.; 522, I., II.; 523, I., II.; 524; 525, 1, 2, 5, (1), (2); 526, I., II., 1, 2; 527, 1, 2, 1), 2), 3.

Andrews & S. 265, notes 1, 2, Rem. 2; 266, 1, 2, 3.

Bullions & M. 1237–1239; 1241; 1244; 1245; 1250–1252; 1255; 1291; 1292.

Allen. 62; 63; 66; 70.

1. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduxĕrant, et in Æduōrum fines pervenĕrant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædui, quum se suăque ab iis defendĕre non possent, legātos ad Cæsărem mittunt rogātum auxilium: "Ita se omni tempŏre de popŭlo Romāno merĭtos esse, ut, pæne in conspectu exercitūs nostri, agri vastāri, libĕri eōrum in servitūtem abdūci, oppĭda expugnāri non debuĕrint." 2. Eōdem tem-

pŏre, Ædui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Æduōrum, Cæsărem certiōrem faciunt, "sese, depopulātis agris, non facĭlè ab oppĭdis vim hostium prohibēre:" item Allobrŏges, qui trans Rhodănum vicos possessionesque habēbant, fugā se ad Cæsărem recipiunt, et demonstrant, "sibi præter agri solum nihil esse relĭqui." 3. Quibus rebus adductus, Cæsar non expectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnĭbus fortūnis sociōrum consumptis, in Santŏnos Helvetii pervenīrent.

XII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Æduōrum et Sequanōrum in Rhodănum influit incredibĭli lenitāte, ita ut ocŭlis, in utram partem fluat, judicāri non possit. Id Helvetii ratĭbus ac lintrĭbus junctis transībant. Ubi per exploratōres Cæsar certior factus est, tres jam copiārum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam verò partem citra flumen Arărim reliquam esse; de tertiā vigiliā cum legionĭbus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quæ nondum flumen transiĕrat. 2. Eos impedītos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eōrum partem concīdit: relĭqui fugæ sese mandārunt, atque in proxĭmas silvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabātur Tigurīnus: nam om-

nis civĭtas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divīsa est. Hic pagus unus, quum domo exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā, Lucium Cassium consŭlem interfecĕrat, et ejus exercĭtum sub jugum miserat. 3. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deōrum immortalium, quæ pars civitātis Helvetiæ insignem calamitātem popŭlo Romāno intulĕrat, ea princeps pœnas persolvit. Quā in re Cæsar non solùm publĭcas, sed etiam privātas injurias ultus est, quòd ejus socĕri, Lucii Pisōnis avum, Lucium Pisōnem legātum, Tigurīni, eōdem prœlio quo Cassium, interfecĕrant.

XIII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: ORATIO OBLĪQUA.

Harkness. 528–533; 548; 549, 1, 2; 550; 551, I., II., III. [Table VI.]
Andrews & S. 266 (entire). [Table VI.]
Bullions & M. 1118; 1119; 1126–1129; 1135; 1136; 1138; 1142; 1147; 1148; 1295; 1296; 1303. [Table VI.]
Allen. 67. Table VI.

1. Hōc prœlio facto, relĭquas copias Helvetiōrum ut consĕqui posset, pontem in Arăre faciendum curat, atque ita exercĭtum transdūcit. Helvetii, repentīno ejus adventu commōti, quum id, quod ipsi diēbus viginti ægerrĭme confecĕrant, ut flumen transīrent, uno illum die fecisse intelligĕrent, legātos ad eum mittunt: cujus legatiōnis, Divĭco princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum

fuĕrat. 2. Is ita cum Cæsăre agit: "Si pacem popŭlus Romānus cum Helvetiis facĕret, in eam partem itūros, atque ibi futūros Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituisset, atque esse voluisset: sin bello persĕqui perseverāret, reminiscerētur et vetĕris incommŏdi popŭli Romāni, et pristĭnæ virtūtis Helvetiōrum. 3. Quòd improvīsò unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suæ magnŏpere virtūti tribuĕret aut ipsos despicĕret: se ita a patrĭbus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte, quàm dolo contendĕrent, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committĕret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitāte popŭli Romāni et internecīone exercĭtus nomen capĕret, aut memoriam prodĕret."

XIV.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: ORATIO OBLĪQUA.

1. His Cæsar ita respondit: "Eo sibi minus dubitātionis dări, quòd eas res, quas legāti Helvetii commemorassent, memoriā tenēret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merĭto popŭli Romāni accidissent: qui si alicūjus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset non fuisse difficĭle cavēre: sed eo deceptum, quòd neque commissum a se intelligĕret, quare timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. 2. Quòd si vetĕris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam re-

centium injuriārum, quòd, eo invīto, iter per provinciam per vim tentāssent, quòd Æduos quòd Ambarros quòd Allobrŏges vexāssent, memoriam deponĕre posse? 3. Quòd suā victoriā tam insolenter gloriarentur, quòdque tam diu se impūne tulisse injurias admirarentur, eòdem pertinere: consuesse enim deos immortāles, quò gravius homĭnes ex commutatiōne rerum doleant, quos pro scelĕre eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem impunitātem concedĕre. 4. Quum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsĭdes ab iis sibi dentur, utì ea, quæ polliceantur factūros intellĭgat; et si Æduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulĕrint, item si Allobrogĭbus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse factūrum." Divico respondit: "Ita Helvetios a majorĭbus suis institūtos esse, utì obsĭdes accipĕre, non dăre consuērint: ejus rei popŭlum Romānum esse testem." Hōc responso dāto, discessit.

XV.

THE USE OF MODES AND TENSES.

1. Postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent: idem Cæsar facit, equitatumque omnem ad numĕrum quattuor millium, quem ex omni provinciā et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactum habēbat, præmittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidiùs novissimum agmen insecūti,

aliēno loco cum equitātu Helvetiorum prœlium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo prœlio sublāti Helvetii, quòd quingentis equitibus tantam multitudĭnem equĭtum propulerant, audaciùs subsistere, nonnunquam ex novissimo agmĭne prœlio nostros lacessĕre cœperunt. 2. Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat, ac satis habebat, in præsentiā, hostem rapīnis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibēre. Ita dies circĭter quindĕcim iter fecerunt, utì inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum, non amplius quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset.

XVI.

THE USE OF MODES AND TENSES.

1. Interim quotidie Cæsar Æduos frumentum, quod essent publicè polliciti, flagitare: nam propter frigŏra, quòd Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut antè dictum est, posita est, non modò frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabŭli quidem satìs magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumĭne Arăre navibus subvexerat, propterea uti minùs poterat, quòd iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedĕre nolebat. Diem ex ducĕre Ædui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicĕre. 2. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oportēret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam co-

piam in castris habebat, in his Divitiăco, et Lisco, qui summo magistratui præerat (quem Vergobrĕtum appellant Ædui, qui creatur annuus, et vitæ necisque in suos habet potestātem), gravĭter eos accūsat, quòd, quum neque emi, neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempŏre, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevētur: præsertim quum magnā ex parte eorum precibus adductus, bellum susceperit, multo etiam graviùs, quòd sit destitūtus, queritur.

XVII.

THE USE OF MODES AND TENSES.

1. Tum demum Liscus, oratiōne Cæsăris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, propōnit: "Esse nonnullos, quorum auctorĭtas apud plebem plurĭmùm valeat, qui privātim plus possint, quàm ipsi magistrātus. Hos, seditiosā atque imprŏbā oratiōne, multitudĭnem deterrĕre, ne frumentum conferant, quod præstare debeant. Si jam principātum Galliæ obtinēre non possint, Gallorum quàm Romanorum imperia præferre: neque dubitare debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, unà cum reliquā Galliā, Æduis libertatem sint ereptūri. 2. Ab iisdem, nostra consilia, quæque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coërcēri non posse: quin etiam, quòd necessarió rem coactus Cæsări enuntiarit, intelligĕre sese, quanto id

cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quàm diu potuerit, tacuisse."

XVIII.

THE USE OF MODES AND TENSES.

1. Cæsar hac oratiōne Lisci, Dumnorĭgem, Divitiăci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quòd, pluribus præsentibus, eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retĭnet: quærit ex solo ea, quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberiùs atque audaciùs. Eadem secreto ab aliis quærit; reperit esse vera: "Ipsum esse Dumnorĭgem, summā audaciā, magnā apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratiā, cupĭdum rerum novarum; complūres annos portoria, reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia, parvo pretiò redempta habēre, propterea quòd, illo licente, contra licēri audeat nemo. 2. His rebus et suam rem familiārem auxisse, et facultātes ad largiendum magnas comparasse: magnum numĕrum equitātus suo sumptu semper alĕre et circum se habēre: neque solùm domi, sed etiam apud finitĭmas civitātes largĭter posse; atque hujus potentiæ causā, matrem in Biturigibus, homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex matre, et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitātes collocasse: favēre et cupĕre Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem; odisse etiam suo nomĭne Cæsărem et

Romānos, quòd eorum adventu potentia ejus deminuta, et Divitiăcus frater in antīquum locum gratiæ atque honōris sit restitūtus. 3. Si quid accĭdat Romānis, summam in spem regni per Helvetios obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romāni, non modò de regno, sed etiam de eā, quam habeat, gratiā desperare." Reperiebat etiam in quærendo Cæsar, quòd prœlium equestre adversum paucis antè diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugæ factum a Dumnorĭge atque ejus equitibus (nam equitatui, quem auxilio Cæsări Ædui miserant, Dumnŏrix præerat); eorum fugā relĭquum esse equitatum perterritum.

XIX.

THE NOUN. ETYMOLOGY.

Harkness. 121–124. Table IV. §§ 1; 2.
Andrews & S. 24–40. (Omit fine print.) [Table IV. §§ 1; 2.]
Bullions & M. 44–50. Table IV. §§ 1; 2.
Allen. 5–10. Table IV. §§ 1; 2; 3; 4.

1. Quibus rebus cognĭtis, quum ad has suspiciōnes certissimæ res accederent, quòd per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quòd obsĭdes inter eos dandos curasset, quòd ea omnia, non modò injussu suo, et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fecisset, quòd a magistrātu Æduorum accusaretur; satis esse causæ arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadver-

tĕre jubēret. 2. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quòd Divitiăci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntātem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiăci animum offendĕret, verebatur. 3. Itaque priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiăcum ad se vocari jubet; et, quotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, princĭpem Galliæ provinciæ, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquĭtur: simul commonefacit, quæ, ipso præsente, in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorĭge sint dicta, et ostendit, quæ separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit: petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi, vel ipse de eo, causā cognĭtā, statuat, vel civitatem statuĕre jubeat.

XX.

THE NOUN. ETYMOLOGY.

Harkness. 42; 45. Table IV. §§ 3; 4.
Andrews & S. 40–43; 46–48; 52; 53. [Table IV. §§ 3; 4.]
Bullions & M. 51; 53–57; 58–67. Table IV. §§ 3; 4.
Allen. Table IV. §§ 3; 4.

1. Divitiăcus multis cum lacrĭmis Cæsărem complexus, obsecrare cœpit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statuĕret: "Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus, quàm se, dolōris capĕre, propterea quòd,

quum ipse gratiā plurimùm domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimùm propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset: quibus opibus ac nervis, non solùm ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amōre fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. 2. Quòd si quid ei a Cæsăre gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiæ apud eum tenēret, neminem existimatūrum, non suā voluntate factum: quā ex re futurum, utì totius Galliæ animi a se averterentur." Hæc quum pluribus verbis flens a Cæsăre peteret, Cæsar ejus dextram prendit: consolātus rogat, finem orandi faciat: tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, ut, et reipublicæ injuriam et suum dolōrem ejus voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. 3. Dumnorĭgem ad se vocat; fratrem adhĭbet; quæ in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quæ ipse intellĭgat, quæ civitas querātur, propōnit: monet, ut, in reliquum tempus, omnes suspiciones vitet; præterĭta se Divitiăco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorĭgi custodes ponit, ut, quæ agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

XXI.

THE NOUN. ETYMOLOGY.

Harkness. 85; 87; 88; 89; 116; 119. Table IV. §§ 5; 6; 7.

Andrews & S. 79; 82; 83; 87; 88; 89; 90. [Table IV. §§ 5; 6; 7.]

Bullions & M. 73–100; 109–113; 115–123; 137; 139–150. Table IV. §§ 5; 6; 7. *See note.*
Allen. 12; 13. Table IV. §§ 5; 6; 7.

1. Eodem die, ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse millia passuum ab ipsīus castris octo, qualis esset natūra montis, et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est, facilem esse. De tertiā vigiliā, Titum Labienum, legatum pro prætōre, cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendĕre jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quartā vigiliā eodem itinĕre, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militāris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullæ et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus præmittitur.

XXII.

THE NOUN. ETYMOLOGY.

1. Primā luce, quum summus mons a Tito Labiēno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longiùs mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captīvis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Considius, equo admisso, ad eum accurrit; dicit montem, quem a Labiēno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallĭcis armis atque insignibus cognovisse.

Cæsar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. 2. Labiēnus, ut erat ei præceptum a Cæsăre, ne prœlium committeret, nisi ipsīus copiæ prope hostium castra visæ essent, ut undique uno tempŏre in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato, nostros exspectabat, prœlioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Cæsar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

XXIII.

THE NOUN. ETYMOLOGY.

Harkness. 125–131.
Andrews & S. 91; 92, I.; 94, 1; 95, (a); 96, (b).
Bullions & M. 176–178; 179, B; 180–184, 185, I.; 186, II.
Allen. 14, 15.

1. Postridie ejus diēi, quòd omnīno biduum supererat, quum exercitui frumentum metiri oportēret, et quòd a Bibracte, oppido Æduorum longè maximo ac copiosissimo, non ampliùs millibus passuum octodĕcim aberat, rei frumentariæ prospiciendum existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitīvos Lucii Æmilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. 2. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterri-

tos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magìs, quòd pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, prœlium non commisissent; sive eo, quòd re frumentariā intercludi posse confiderent; commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insĕqui ac lacessere cœperunt.

XXIV.

THE ADJECTIVE. ETYMOLOGY.

Harkness. 156–158; 159, I., II., III.
Andrews & S. 113–115 4.
Bullions & M. 194–196; 199; 200.
Allen. 16–18.

1. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum, ita, utì supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Galliā citeriore proximè conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocaret: ac totum montem hominibus compleri, et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt: ipsi, confertissimā acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV.

THE VERB. ETYMOLOGY.

Harkness. 243–260. Consult 261–286.
Andrews & S. 162–177. Consult Table II.
Bullions & M. 331–369. Consult 371–409.
Allen. 30; 33. Table II.

1. Cæsar, primùm suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut, æquato omnium periculo, spem fugæ tolleret, cohortatus suos, prœlium commisit. Milites, e loco superiore pilis missis, facilè hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Eā disjectā, gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quòd, pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, quum ferrum se inflexisset neque evellere, neque, sinistrā impedītā, satìs commodê pugnare poterant; multi ut, diù jactato brachio, præoptarent scutum manu emittere, et nudo corpore pugnare. 2. Tandem, vulneribus defessi, et pedem referre, et, quòd mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eò se recipere cœperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudebant, et novissimis præsidio erant, ex itinere nostros latĕre aperto agressi, circumvenīre: et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et prœlium redintegrare cœperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartītô intulerunt: prima

ac secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret; tertia, ut venientes exciperet.

XXVI.

THE VERB. ETYMOLOGY.

1. Ita ancipiti prœlio diù atque acríter pugnatum est. Diutius quum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se, ut cœperant, in montem receperunt; alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto prœlio, quum ab horā septimā ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quòd pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque, mataras ac tragulas subjiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. 2. Diù quum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potìti sunt. Ibi Orgetorĭgis filia, atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo prœlio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuerunt, eāque totā nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingŏnum die quarto pervenerunt, quum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisorum nostri, triduum morati, eos sequi non potuissent. Cæsar ad Lingŏnas literas nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve aliā re juvarent: qui si juvissent, se eodem loco, quo

Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi cœpit.

XXVII.

THE VERB. ETYMOLOGY.

1. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopiā adducti, legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui quum eum in itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eò postquam Cæsar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. 2. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigēnus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne, armis traditis, supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quòd, in tanta multitudine dediticiorum, suam fugam aut occultari, aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, primā nocte ex castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanōrum contenderunt.

XXVIII.

THE VERB. ETYMOLOGY.

1. Quod ubi Cæsar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his, utì conquirerent, et reducerent, si sibi

purgati esse vellent, imperavit; reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfūgis traditis, in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrīgos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti jussit; et, quòd, omnibus fructibus amissis, domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere jussit. 2. Id eā maximè ratione fecit, quòd noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare; ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliæ provinciæ Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Æduis, quod egregiā virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

XXIX.

THE VERB. ETYMOLOGY.

1. In castris Helvetiorum tabulæ repertæ sunt literis Græcis confectæ, et ad Cæsărem relatæ, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent: et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat, capitum

Helvetiorum millia ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingorum millia triginta sex, Latobrigorum quattuordecim, Raurăcorum viginti tria, Boiorum triginta duo, ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Cæsar imperaverat, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

NOTES.

PART I.

III.

It is intended that the parts of the Grammar or Tables referred to at the head of each section be committed to memory; and it is recommended that all referred to, be learned.

1 and 2. Pronounce and apply rules for pronunciation.

1. Amo. *H.* §§ 26, I.; 7, 3; 10; 7, 1. *A. & S.* 14, 4; 17; 19, A, 1; 7; 10; 7, 2. The references in this section apply to the English method.

Deæ. *Æ* is diphthong. *H.* 9, 1). *A. & S.* 9; 7, 2.

Obit. *H.* 7, 3, (6). *A. & S.* 23, 1. *B. & M.* 13, 6.

Moneo. *H.* 22; 26, 2. *A. & S.* 13, 3; 14, 5; 21, Exc. 1. *B. & M.* 13, Exc. 1; 18. *A.* 3, 1.

Adolesco. Compound word with first part entire and ending in cons.

Sublātus. Compound word with first part entire and ending in cons.

Reprehendo. *H.* 27. *A. & S.* 16, 1.

Pompēius. *H.* 9, 2. *A. & S.* 9, 1.

2. Societātis. *H.* 12. *A. & S.* 10, Exc. *B. & M.* 14, 4.

Angustias. *H.* 12, 2. *A. & S.* 12, Exc. *B. & M.* 14, 4, last part.

Pabulationĭbus. *H.* 28. *A. & S.* 16, 3.

IV.

1. Distinguish the personal endings. Table I. p. 109.

2. **Amo**, I love; **amantur**, *they are loved;* **amāris**, *ye are loved.*

3. **They love**, *amant;* **we are loved**, *amāmur.*

In all these exercises on the forms the pupil should distinguish carefully the *stem* and the *ending;* and should also compare the forms for the different endings in all particulars.

V.

VI.

VII.

In the vocabulary, *æ* is the ending of the Genitive.

1. (a.) Notice the mark of quantity over the final *ā* of *lusciniā.*

Justitia. When the same form occurs in two or more cases the pupil should give the meaning for each case.

2. (a.) **Of justice**, *justitiæ. By, from, with, in,* are all to be rendered by the same case.

Thou nightingale, vocative case.

VIII.

1. The pupil should, after translating, analyze the sentence, giving the particulars mentioned in the grammatical references. He should then parse each word according to the forms, Table V. p. 157, omitting, in the form, the points about which he has not yet learned; *e. g.:* —

(a.) **Sapientia regit**, *wisdom rules.* This is a simple sentence having for its subject, *sapientia*, and its predi-

cate, *regit;* neither of them modified. *Sapientia* is a common noun of the first declension, feminine gender, from nominative *sapientia;* declined N. *sapientia*, G. *sapientiæ*, D. *sapientiæ*, A. *sapientiam*, V. *sapientia*, Ab. *sapientiā;* plural not used: its stem is —, its case-ending —. It is found in the nominative singular, and is the subject of *regit*, according to Rule — (here repeat rule). *H.* Rule III., 367. *A. & S.* 209, (a). *B. & M.* 633, 1. *A.* 7, 1.

The numbers of the Rules of Syntax for Andrews & Stoddard's Grammar will be found in Table III. (p. 134).

Regit is a regular transitive verb of the third conjugation, from *rego;* principal parts, *rego*, *regĕre*, *rexi*, *rectum*. It is formed by affixing to the present stem *it*. It is found in the present tense, indicative mode, active voice, and (omit synopsis for the present) is inflected — *rego*, *regis*, *regit*, *regĭmus*, *regĭtis*, *regunt*. It is in the third person, singular number, and agrees with its subject, *sapientia*, according to Rule —. *H.* Rule XXXV. 460. *A. & S.* Rule VI. 209 (b). *B. & M.* Rule II. 634. *A.* 49. (Consult also *H.* 347–356. *A. & S.* 281. *B. & M.* 1399–1418.)

Filia. *H.* 42, 3, (4). *A. & S.* 43, Dat. and Abl. plur. *B. & M.* 57. *A.* 9, 4.

(b.) **Justitiam amat,** *he loves justice.*

Analysis. This is a simple sentence, having for its subject a pronoun implied in the verb (*ille*, he), and for its predicate, *amat*. Its subject is unmodified; the predicate is modified by a direct object, *justitiam*.

Justitiam. *H.* R. V. 371. *A. & S.* R. XXVI. 229. *B. & M.* R. VIII. 712. *A.* 52.

Amat, agrees with a pronoun (*ille*) implied in the end-

ing, for its subject. *H.* 367, 2, (1). *A. & S.* 209, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* 636.

Puniētis. *A.* 49, II.

2. (a.) **The daughter will be loved,** *filia amabĭtur.*

(b.) **Justice,** accusative case; place the verb last.

IX.

2. **O mind,** vocative case.

X.

1. (a.) **Regna regunt,** *they rule the kingdoms:* so far as the forms are concerned, we might translate it, *the kingdoms rule; regna* being made subject, instead of object.

(b.) **Oppĭda,** object.

Legātis, indirect object. *H.* R. XII. 384. *A. & S.* R. XX. 223. *B. & M.* R. XXVIII. 818. Special Rule XXXIII. 831. *A.* 51, III.

Puer libros amat, translate in this order: *puer amat libros.*

XI.

Vocabulary, m. masculine; *f.* feminine; *n.* neuter.

The general rules will apply to genders of words given unless special mention is made. It is thought best, however, to give in the vocabularies the gender of all third declension nouns.

1. Apply the grammar lessons.

Iter. For stem see "*Special Remarks*" in Table IV. § 5.

XII.

1. (a.) **A rege,** *by the king.* **A** is a preposition connecting and marking the relation between *vocabātur* and *rege.* *A* or *ab; H.* 434, 3. *A. & S.* 195, 6, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* 988. *Rege; H.* R. XXXII. 432, or R. XXI. 414, 5. *A. & S.* R. XXVIII. 241; R. XLV. 248. *B. & M.* R. LXVII. 982; R. XLIII. 878. *A.* 56 I., IV. Gender, masculine by signification. The special rules for the government of *rege* are to be preferred, although the general are first given. The pupil should learn both.

(b.) **Conjuratiōnem,** fem. *H.* 100, 3. *A. & S.* 59, 1. *B. & M.* 154. *A.* 11, IV.

Nobilitātis. *H.* R. XVI. 395, 396, I. *A. & S.* R. VIII. 211, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* R. XV. 745, 751. *A.* 50, I.

A Garumnā, *from the,* etc. *H.* R. XXXII. 432, or R. XXVI. 421. *A. & S.* 241, 254, Rem. 3. *B. & M.* R. LXVII. 982. *A.* 56, I.

Flumĭne. *H.* R. II. 363. *A. & S.* R. I. 204. *B. & M.* R. I. 622. *A.* 46.

Montes. *A. & S.* R. XXXII. 235. *B. & M.* R. LXVI. 981. Gender; *H.* 110, 1. *A. & S.* 64, 1. *B. & M.* 165.

2. (a.) **By the soldier,** use the preposition.

(b.) **Into the river,** *in flumen.* *H.* 435, 1. *A. & S.* 235 (2). *B. & M.* 987, 988. *A.* 56, I. 1.

XIII.

2. The English prepositions *of, by, from, in,* etc., though represented sometimes by corresponding Latin prepositions, are still to be regarded also as signs of the different cases: hence, as this is purely an exercise on forms, the

pupil should here translate **In armies**, by *exercitĭbus*, not *in exercitĭbus*.

XIV.

1. (a.) **Diem**, gender, *H.* 120. *A.* & *S.* 90, 1. *B.* & *M.* 146. *A.* 13.

Suscĭpit. *H.* 213. *A.* & *S.* 159. *B.* & *M.* 294. *A.* 30, III.

(b.) **In colle**, *upon the*, etc.; *colle*, gender, *H.* 106, 1. *A.* & *S.* 63, 3. *B.* & *M.* 160.

Hostis, gen. case, limiting *impĕtus*. *H.* R. XVI. 395. *A.* & *S.* R. VIII. 211. *B.* & *M.* R. XV. 751. *A.* 50, I.

2. (a.) **In line of battle**, *in acie ;* the preposition is to be here used ; so also

(b.) **In the city**, *in urbe*. *H.* R. XXVI. 421. *A.* & *S.* 254, Rem. 3. *B.* & *M.* 931, 937. *A.* 55, III.

To the soldiers. *H.* R. XII. 384. *A.* & *S.* R. XX. 223. *B.* & *M.* R. XXVII. 818 ; XXXIII. 831. *A.* 51, III.

XV.

The pupil will now consult the vocabulary at the end of the book. Observe that the nominative form of a noun, adjective, or pronoun; and the first person singular, present indicative active, of a verb, is the form to be looked for in the vocabulary. It will be noticed that the masculine forms of adjectives of the first and second declension correspond to the forms of masculine nouns of declension second ; the neuter forms, to neuter nouns of the same declension ; and the feminine, to nouns of declension first.

Decline the adjective *across* the columns ; thus : *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*.

The stems of adjectives are found in the same way as those of nouns.

1. (a.) **Puer bonus.** *H.* R. XXXIII. 438. *A.* & *S.* R. II. 205. *B.* & *M.* R. V. 650. *A.* 47.

2. Remember that the adjective must *agree* with its noun. The pupil will also discover that the noun is generally placed before its adjective: this law, however, is by no means invariable.

XVI.

The form for parsing adjectives will be readily understood. The degrees of comparison must be omitted for three or four lessons.

1. **Relĭquos Gallos,** *rest of the Gauls;* literally, *the remaining Gauls.*

Virtūte. *H.* R. XXX. 429. *A.* & *S.* R. XLVII. 250. *B.* & *M.* R. XLVII. 889. *A.* 54, I.

Prœliis. *H.* R. XXI. 414. *A.* & *S.* R. XLIV. 247. *B.* & *M.* R. XLII. 873. *A.* 54, II.

Loco. *H.* 422, 1, 1). *A.* & *S.* 254, Rem. 2, (b). *B.* & *M.* 937, 2.

Multis cum, etc. = *cum multis lacrĭmis.*

XVII.

XVIII.

1. (a.) **Contendĭt et pervēnit,** a compound predicate.

Et is a conjunction coördinate, connecting *contendit* and *pervēnit.* *A.* & *S.* R. LXXXI. 278. *B.* & *M.* R. CVIII. 1369.

Deponĕre, *to lay aside:* present infinitive active, having no subject, depending upon some verb understood as

subject or object of that verb. It is limited by *recentium injuriārum memoriam.*

The infinitive is construed like a neuter noun, and may be subject or object of another verb.

(b.) **Legatiōnis**, limits *locum;* notice the gender of the word.

Namēius et Verudoctius, compound subject; voc. case, *H.* 45, 5, 2). *A. & S.* 52. *B. & M.* 65. *A.* 10, 5.

Obtinēbant. *H.* 463, II. *A. & S.* 209, Rem. 12. *B. & M.* R. III. 643. *A.* 49, I.

Provincia, subject of *habēbit.*

Homĭnes, direct object.

Popŭli. *H.* 396, II. *A. & S.* 211, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* 746. *A.* 50, III.

Inimīcos, noun in apposition with *homĭnes.* It may also be parsed as an adjective.

Locis. *H.* R. XV. 392. *A. & S.* R. XIX. 222. *B. & M.* R. XLI. 870. *A.* 51, I.

2. (a.) **Bold**, *audax.*

Are made, *instituo.*

(b.) **Neighbors**, in apposition with men, and hence to be put in the same case.

XIX.

Oral practice upon the numerals is recommended.

1. (b.) **Optĭmi**, superlative of *bonus.*

Altitūdo, notice the gender.

XX.

1. (a.) **Extrēmis**, superlative of *exter* or *extĕrus.*

Ditissĭmus, from *dives* or *dis.*

Numĕro, abl. of specification, *in respect to.*

Duodĕcim, acc. plural neuter, agreeing with *oppĭda,*

understood. *Ad duodĕcim oppĭda, about twelve [towns] in number.* By an indeclinable adjective or noun is meant one which has the same form for all cases.

XXI.

1. (a.) **Magis arduus.** *H.* R. LI. 582. *A.* & *S.* R. LXXX. 277. *B.* & *M.* R. LXXI. 996.

(b.) **Summa in se,** etc., *toward himself.*

2. **Our book.** *H.* 445, 1. *A.* & *S.* 205, note 1. *B.* & *M.* 651. *A.* 47.

XXII.

1. (a.) **Eădem,** accusative plural neuter, direct object. *H.* 441. *A.* & *S.* 205, Rem. 7, (2). *B.* & *M.* 658. *A.* 47, III.

Id. *H.* R. V. 371, 3). *A.* & *S.* R. XXIX. 232. *B.* & *M.* R. IX. 713. *A.* 51, III., end.

Hōc, *on this account.* *H.* R. XXI. 414. *A.* & *S.* R. XLIV. 247. *B.* & *M.* R. XLII. 873. *A.* 54, I.

Eis, dative case.

Unam partem, etc. The full form would be *Unam partem incŏlunt Belgæ, aliam partem incŏlunt Aquitāni, tertiam partem incŏlunt ii, qui ipsōrum linguā Celtæ appellantur, nostrā linguā Galli appellantur.* A study of this form with the aid of the grammatical references will enable the pupil to analyze this sentence and the succeeding ones. The teacher may deem it advisable to omit for the present the analysis of complex and compound sentences, as it will hereafter come up more particularly. A general analysis, at least, is recommended. Pupils can consult *H.* 343–361. *A.* & *S.* 200–203, 281. *B.* & *M.* 1399–1418.

Aquitāni, subject of *incŏlunt* understood.

Qui, agreeing with its antecedent *ii* and subject of *appellantur*. *H.* R. XXXIV. 445. *A. & S.* R. III. 206, Rem. 19, (a). *B. & M.* R. VII. 683. *A.* 48, I.

Linguā, ablative of means.

Celtæ. *H.* R. I. 362. *A. & S.* R. VII. 210. *B. & M.* R. VI. 666. *A.* 46.

(b.) **Proxĭmi**, agreeing with some noun or pronoun understood.

Germānis. *H.* R. XIV. 391. *A. & S.* 222, 3 (Rem. 1). *B. & M.* R. XL. 860. *A.* 51, I.

Quibuscum = *cum quibus*. *H.* 187, 2. *A. & S.* 241, Rem. 1. *B. & M.* 986. *A.* 21, II.

Quum, a subordinate conjunction connecting *contendunt* to *prohĭbent*.

Aut — aut, coördinate conjunctions. *H.* 309. *A. & S.* 198, I. *B. & M.* R. CVIII. 1369, 1374. *A.* 43, 3.

Finĭbus. *H.* R. XXVII. 425. *A. & S.* R. XLVIII. 251. *B. & M.* R. LI. 916. *A.* 54, VI.

Ipsi, suis, refer to the subject of *prohĭbent*, *they*, *i. e.* the Helvetii.

Eōrum, refers to the Germans.

XXIII.

1. (a.) **Sim**, *I may be* or *I am*. The translation of the subjunctive is often the same as that of the indicative; yet in order to distinguish the two modes, it has been thought best to retain in the exercises on the forms the potential translations of *may*, *might*, *may have*, etc.; *may* or *can*, present; *might*, *could*, etc., imperfect; *may have*, perfect; *might have*, pluperfect.

2. (a.) **You will have been**, future perfect.

(b.) **They shall be**, imperative.

XXIV.

1. **Helvetiis**, dative.

2. **Primi**, agreeing with *hi*, subject of *sunt*.

Aliis. *H.* 149. *A.* & *S.* 107. *B.* & *M.* 191. *A.* 16, I., last paragraph. *H.* 441. *A.* & *S.* 205, Rem. 7 (1). *B.* & *M.* 658. *A.* 47, III.

Vera, acc. plural neuter, agreeing with *ea*, understood, the subject of *esse*. *H.* R. XLIX. 545. *A.* & *S.* R. XXXV. 239. *B.* & *M.* R. LXXIX. 1136. *A.* 53, VI.

Esse, construed as object of *repĕrit*. *H.* 550. *A.* & *S.* 270. *B.* & *M.* 1118, 1148. *A.* 58, IV.

Absunt. *H.* 288. *A.* & *S.* 154, Rem. 5. *B.* & *M.* 279. *A.* 29, II.

XXV.

XXVI.

XXVII.

1. **Quid**, subject of *accĭdat*. *H.* 190, 1. *A.* & *S.* 138, 2. *B.* & *M.* 249, 250. *A.* 22, III.

Quantæque = *et quantæ; que* is an enclitic conjunction, always attached to some other word: *quantæ* agrees with *civitātes*.

Essent, *were* (might be).

De, *upon*.

2. **Die**. *H.* R. XXVIII. 426. *A.* & *S.* R. L. 253. *B.* & *M.* R. LX. 949. *A.* 55, I.

Rhodăni, limiting *ripam*.

Omnes, nom. plural used substantively.

In relĭquum tempus, *for the future* (*for the remaining time*).

Tempus. *H.* 435, 378, 1. *A. & S.* 235 (2), Rem. 4. *B. & M.* 987, 991, 950, 952. *A.* 56, I. 1.

Suspiciōnes, *grounds of suspicion.*

Relĭquis, dative.

Fugæ, genitive.

Quare ne, etc., *wherefore that he should not cause that.*

XXVIII.

XXIX.

1. **Quam.** *H.* 170, 2. *A. & S.* 127, 4. *B. & M.* 229, 1003. *A.* 17, V. 5.

Facĕre. *H.* 237. *A. & S.* 162, 4. *B. & M.* 323. *A.* 33, III. 2.

Rescindi, present infinitive passive, depending upon *jubet.* *H.* 550, 551, II. *A. & S.* R. LXXI. 270. *B. & M.* R. LXXXIII. 1148, 1153. *A.* 58, 4.

Regni, limiting *spem.*

Obtinendi. *H.* 562, 563. *A. & S.* 275, I., II., Rem. 1. *B. & M.* 1304, R. CIV. 1322. *A.* 73, II.

Cognoscĭte. *H.* R. XLVIII. 535. *A. & S.* R. LXIX. 267. *B. & M.* R. LXXVII. 1110. *A.* 58, III.

Ipsis, *the very ones.* *H.* 452. *A. & S.* 207, Rem. 28. *B. & M.* 1035. *A.* 20, II.

2. **Illum,** subject of *cernĕre; that he* [*the commander*] *is present,* etc.

Rogat, etc. = *rogat ut finem,* etc.

Orandi. *H.* 563. *A. & S.* 275, II., Rem. 1. *B. & M.* R. CIV. 1322, 1327. *A.* 73, II.

Quærendo. *H.* 566, II. *A. & S.* 276, Rem. 4. *B. & M.* 1340. *A.* 74, V.

Pluribus. *H.* 165, 1. *A. & S.* 110. *B. & M.* 197. *A.* 17, II. *Quum* [*ille*] *flens petĕret hæc a,* etc.

XXX.

XXXI.

1. **Munitiōni.** *H.* 386. *A. & S.* R. XXI. 224. *B. & M.* R. XXXII. 826; R. XXXIX. 855. *A.* 51, V., II.

Id, used adjectively.

Flumen, direct object.

2. **Qualis.** *H.* 188, 4. *A. & S.* 139, 5 (3). *B. & M.* 257. *A.* 21, I.

Qui, the antecedent is *eos* understood, object of *misit; misit eos qui cognoscĕrent qualis natūra*, etc.

Propterea quod, *because;* literally, *on this account because; propterea* is an adverb, and may be parsed as modifying something preceding, not expressed.

Tertiamque. *Que* connects *consedisset* and *occupavisset.*

Agri. *H.* 396, III. *A. & S.* R. IX. 212. *B. & M.* R. XV. 751; R. XIX. 771. *A.* 50, II.

Sequăni, an adjective.

Optĭmus. *H.* 432, 2. *A. & S.* 210, Rem. 1. *B. & M.* R. VI. 666.

XXXII.

XXXIII.

The full synopsis of verbs can now be given.

1. **Certiōres facti sunt,** *were informed;* lit. *made more certain.*

Sese, *that he;* subject of *esse factūrum;* a reduplicated form of *se.*

Esse factūrum. Observe that the participle in the compound tenses is declined, and always agrees with its noun.

Eò, adverb of place.

Erat dictum, *id* understood subject, indicated by the neuter, *dictum.*

Concilio. *H.* R. XXXI. 431. *A. & S.* R. LIV. 257. *B. & M.* R. LXIII. 965. *A.* 54, X.

Antè, adverb of time.

Hæc, *to these things*, not *persons;* the latter would be *ad hos.*

Æduos sibi, etc., *that the Ædui, since . . . . had been made*, etc. *H.* 551, 528. *A. & S.* 270, 266, 2. *B. & M.* 1135, 1148, 1295. *A.* 59, IV.; 67.

Sibi. *H.* 388, 1. *A. & S.* 225, II. *B. & M.* R. XXXVI. 844. *A.* 51, VIII.

Tentassent, for *tentavissent.* *H.* 234. *A. & S.* 162, 7 (a). *B. & M.* 315. *A.* 33, III.

XXXIV.

1. **Luce,** abl. of time.

Summus mons. *H.* 441, 6. *A. & S.* 205, Rem: 17. *B. & M.* 662. *A.* 47, VIII.

Longius, adverb.

Mille. *H.* 178. *A. & S.* 118, 6, (b). *B. & M.* 204. *A.* 18, 3.

Passĭbus. *H.* R. XXIII. 417. *A. & S.* R. LIII. 256, 2. *B. & M.* R. XLVIII. 895. *A.* 54, V.

Ut, as.

Lābiēni, limiting *adventus* understood.

Equo admisso, *at full speed;* lit. *the horse having been urged forward;* abl. absolute.

Considius accurrit, principal subject and principal verb.

2. **Equĭtes Ariovisti,** *that the horsemen of Ariovistus were approaching*, etc.

Propius. *H.* 433, 1; 437, 1. *A. & S.* 238. *B. & M.* 867. *A.* 56, II.

Accedĕre. *H.* 549. *A. & S.* R. LXX. 269. *B. & M.* R. LXXXII. 1147. *A.* 58, IV. These infinitive clauses form the subject of *nuntiātum est.*

Nostros, *our men,* used substantively; the noun omitted is *milĭtes* or *homĭnes.*

Lapĭdes. *H.* 106, 2. *A. & S.* 63, 3. *B. & M.* 160.

Telăque = *et tela.*

Suis — que. *H.* 385. *A. & S.* 223, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* R. XXXIII. 831. *A.* 51, III.

Ne quod, indefinite pronoun with *ne; ne, H.* 584, 1. *A. & S.* 191, III. Rem. 3. *B. & M.* 1113.

XXXV.

1. **Eo die,** render in this order: *eo die sequĭtur hostes intervallo quo,* etc.

Quo. *H.* 445, 8. *A. & S.* 206, 6. *B. & M.* 704. *A.* 55, II.

Consuērat. *H.* 234. *A. & S.* 162, 7 (a). *B. & M.* 315. *A.* 33, III.

Intervallo. *H.* R. XXIV. 418, 2; 378, 2. *A. & S.* 236, Rem. 4. *B. & M.* R. LXII. 958. *A.* 33, III.

Supplicio, abl. case.

Divitiăci, gen. limiting *anĭmum.*

Sibi, *by himself* or *to himself. H.* 388. *A. & S.* 225, III. *B. & M.* R. XXXVI. 847. *A.* 51, VIII.

Timendum esse, *id* understood is the grammatical subject. *B. & M.* R. CII. 1305. Translation: *Nor did he think he ought to fear without reason.*

Dandos, *esse,* understood.

2. **Superavĕrint,** perfect subjunctive; *if the Romans conquered,* etc.

Æduis. *H.* R. XXVII. 425; 434, 1. *A. & S.* 251, R. XLVIII.; 242, R. XXXIX. *B. & M.* R. L. 911; LI. 916; LXX. 993. *A.* 54, VI.

Nisi si, *unless.*

Quid, subject of *sit.*

Auxilii, partitive gen. limiting *quid.*

Gallis, dat. of agent: or "person to whom the necessity exists." *Allen.*

Esse faciendum, in the *oratio oblīqua*, dependent upon a verb of saying understood, as its object. *Idem* is its grammatical subject.

Ut, *namely that.*

Domo. *H.* 117, 1. *A. & S.* 89. *B. & M.* 144. *A.* 12, 2.

In this section occur examples illustrating what has been said before, that the translation of the subjunctive is often the same as that of the indicative. It should also be remarked that in the Active Periphrastic, the circumlocution "*about to*" need not always be retained in translation. The idea can often be more elegantly and as accurately expressed in other words.

XXXVI.

1. **Equitātum,** object of *præmittit.*

Coactum, from *cogo*, agrees with *quem; had (having been) collected.* *H.* 388, 1, 2). *A. & S.* 274, Rem. 4. *B. & M.* 1350, 1358.

Qui, refers to *equitātum.*

Cupidius. *H.* 444, 1. *A. & S.* 122, Rem. 3. *B. & M.* 902, last paragraph. *A.* 17, V.

Novissĭmum agmen, *the newest rank, the last rank, the rear.*

2. **Jusjurandum.** *H.* 125, 1. *A. & S.* 91. *B. & M.* 176. *A.* 14, II. 2.

De, after.

Id ne, etc., *Cæsar thought he ought to take great precautions*, etc.; lit. *Cæsar thought it ought to be especially provided beforehand by himself*, etc.

Præcavendum, *esse*, compare XXXV. and notes.

This section has been arranged to give opportunity for study on the formation of principal parts of verbs; to this end a few references are subjoined which may assist the learners.

1. **Movent.** *Mōvi*, *H.* 253, 270, 258. *A. & S.* 167, 168, N. 1. *B. & M.* 370, 348, 378. *A.* 30, II., IV. *Mōtum*, *H.* 256, 258. *B. & M.* 359.

Facit. *Fēci*, *H.* 279. *A. & S.* 171, Exc. 1, (a), (b); 163. *B. & M.* 348, 388. *A.* 30, IV., III.

Cadunt. *Cecĭdi*, *H.* 254, 258, 280. *A. & S.* 163, Rem.; 171, Exc. 1, (b). *B. & M.* 344, 345, 387. *A.* 30, IV. *Cāsum*, *H.* 257, 258. *A. & S.* 171, Exc. 5, (a). *B. & M.* 357, 361, 352, 387.

2. **Dant.** *Dăre*, *H.* 250. *A. & S.* 164, 289, 290, (a). *B. & M.* 373, I. 1. *A.* 78, III. 2, Exc.

Posĭta est. *H.* 252. *A. & S.* 171, Exc. 2, Exc. 7, (a). *B. & M.* 391. *A.* 30, IV.

XXXVII.

1. **Quibus.** *H.* 445, 8. *A. & S.* 206, (b), (1). *B. & M.* 688. *A.* 48, III.

Et — et, *both — and.*

Quod. *H.* 453. *A. & S.* 206, (17). *B. & M.* 701. *A.* 48, IV.

Rescĭit, *rescisco.*

Quorum, its antecedent is *his*.

His, indirect object of *imperāvit*.

Conquirĕrent, subject *illi*, referring to *his*, *H.* 252, 260, II. *A.* & *S.* 171, Exc. 3. *B.* & *M.* 393. *A.* 30, IV.

Sibi, dat. of agent.

Purgāti esse. *H.* 552, 1. *A.* & *S.* 271, Rem. 4. *B.* & *M.* R. LXXX.–1138. *A.* 58, IV.

2. **Itūros** — *esse, would go; oratio oblīqua*, having for its subject *Helvetios*, and depending upon a verb of saying understood as its object. *If*, etc., *he said that the Helvetii.*

Eos, subject of *esse; and wished them to be.*

Æduis. *H.* 385, 2. *A.* & *S.* R. XXII. 225. *B.* & *M.* R. XXXI, 824. *A.* 51, III.

Dumnorĭgem, subject of *designāri.*

Plurĭbus præsentĭbus. *H.* 430. *A.* & *S.* 257, Rem. 2, Rem. 7. *B.* & *M.* 972. *A.* 54, X. *Præsens* is used as the present participle of *adesse.* — *Allen;* translate, *in the presence of many;* lit. *many being present.*

XXXVIII.

1. **Cæsărem**, object.

Desilīte, literally, *leap down;* imperative. *H.* 284. *A.* & *S.* 176. *B.* & *M.* 404. *A.* 30, IV.

Commilitōnes. *H.* R. IV. 369. *A.* & *S.* R. XXXVII. 240. *B.* & *M.* R. LXIV. 974. *A.* 53.

Vultis, *volo.*

Prodĕre, compounded of *pro* and *do.* Refer to *do* and its compounds in the grammar.

Ubi se, etc., *when he thought he was being put off too long.*

Diutius. *H.* 305, 4. *A.* & *S.* 104, 6. *B.* & *M.* 467. *A.* 41.

Quo, compare note on *quibus*, XXXVII.

Militĭbus, dat. case.

2. **Nobilissĭmos,** agreeing with *viros*, *men*, understood.

Qui dicĕrent = *dicĕre.*

Sibi. *H.* 387. *A.* & *S.* 226. *B.* & *M.* R. XXX. 821. *A.* 51, VI.

Esse, dependent upon *dicĕrent* [object], *it was.*

Facĕre, subject of *esse*, *H.* 549, 2. *A.* & *S.* 269, Rem. 3. *B.* & *M.* R. LXXVIII. 1118; R. LXXXII. 1147. *A.* 58, IV.

Aliud. *H.* 149. *A.* & *S.* 107. *B.* & *M.* 191. *A.* 16, I.

Habērent, *they had.*

Rogāre, depends upon *dicĕrent.* *H.* 371, 3). *A.* & *S.* 232. *B.* & *M.* R. IX. 713. *A.* 52, I., last paragraph.

Voluntāte. *H.* 414, 2. *A.* & *S.* 249, II. *B.* & *M.* R. XLII. 873. *A.* 54, I.

Sibi. *B.* & *M.* R. XXXV. 840.

Liceat, has *facĕre* for its subject.

PART II.

THE "Commentaries of Caius Julius Cæsar" are brief memoranda of the events in the wars by which the Romans subdued Gaul. There are seven books, each book giving a journal of one year. The first book gives the narrative of the Helvetian war and of the campaign against Ariovistus, king of the Germans. The events here narrated took place in the spring of 58 B. C. The Helvetii occupying a portion of modern Switzerland, numbering three hundred and fifty thousand, burned their villages and commenced an emigration to the western part of Gaul. Cæsar, who was then the governor of the Roman province in Gaul, saw that such a movement would be detrimental to the interests of the Roman people, and determined to prevent it. The manner in which he carried out his determination, the consequent war, and the final defeat of the Helvetii are the subjects treated of in the twenty-nine sections or chapters, which form Part II. of this volume. The author of the "Commentaries," Julius Cæsar, was born B. C. 100, was made consul B. C. 59, commenced civil war B. C. 49, was made perpetual dictator B. C. 44, and was assassinated in the senate house in the same year.

I.

DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

It is recommended that special attention be given, for the five first sections or chapters, to the analysis of sentences.

1. **Gallia.** Transalpine Gaul, excepting that part under the rule of the Romans.

Est divīsa = divīsa est; from *divĭdo*.

Partes. *H.* 435, 1. *A.* & *S.* 235 (2). *B.* & *M.* R. LXVIII. 987. *A.* 56, I. 1.

Quarum, agreeing with *partes* as its antecedent. *H.* R. XXXIV. 445. *A.* & *S.* R. III. 206. *B.* & *M.* R. VII. 683. *A.* R. III. 48, — it limits *partem* understood with which *unam* agrees. *H.* 396, III. *A.* & *S.* R. IX. 212. *B.* & *M.* R. XIX. 771. *A.* R. V. 2, 50, II.

Linguā (*institūtis*, etc.). *H.* R. XXX. 429. *A.* & *S.* R. XLVII. 250. *B.* & *M.* R. XLVII. 889. *A.* R. VIII. 1, 54, 1.

Garumna, gender: *H.* 35, I. 2. *A.* & *S.* 28, 2. *B.* & *M.* 33, I. (2). *A.* 6, 2. Number: *H.* 130. *A.* & *S.* 95, (a). *B.* & *M.* 177.

A, ab. *H.* 434, 3. *A.* & *S.* 195, 6, Rem. 2. *B.* & *M.* 472. *A.* 42, IV.

Divĭdit. *H.* 463, 3. *A.* & *S.* 209, R. 12, (2). *B.* & *M.* R. III. 643, 644. *A.* 49, I.

2. **Horum.** *H.* 396, III. 3). *A.* & *S.* R. IX. 212. *B.* & *M.* R. XIX. 771. *A.* R. V. 2, 50, II. 2.

Fortissĭmi. *H.* 438, 2. *A.* & *S.* 210, Rem. 1. *B.* & *M.* R. VI. 666.

Minĭme, modifies *sæpe*; *least frequently* = *very seldom*.

Effeminandos. *H.* 562, 565. *A. & S.* 275, II. *B. & M.* R. CIV. 1322. *A.* 73, IV.

Proxĭmi, agreeing with *illi* understood, subject of *sunt.*

Virtūte. *H.* 115, 2. *A. & S.* 67, 2. *B. & M.* 171.

3. Obtinēre. *H.* 549. *A. & S.* 269. *B. & M.* R. LXXVIII. 1118, R. LXXXII. 1147. *A.* 58, IV.

Ab Sequănis, etc., *on the side of the*, etc.

4. Vergit, *it extends towards the north.*

Solem. *H.* 112, Exc. *A. & S.* 66, Exc. *B. & M.* 173, gender. The genitive plural of many monosyllables is wanting.

Montes, notice the gender; grammar, exceptions to rules for gender in Dec. III. The pupil should find the exception.

Ad Hispaniam, *near Spain*, or *off Spain.*

Inter occāsum, *i. e.*, *toward the northwest.*

Solis, subjective or objective genitive? *H.* 396. *A. & S.* 211, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* 745, 746. *A.* 50.

II.

THE PLAN OF ORGETORIX.

1. Messālā, *in the consulship of Marcus*, etc. *H.* R. XXXI. 431, 430. *A. & S.* R. LIV. 257, Rem. 7, (a). *B. & M.* R. LXIII. 965, 972. *A.* 54, X.

Consulĭbus, note and explain the gender.

Regni, subjective or objective?

Cupiditāte, abl. of "*cause, manner, means;*" give the rule with its number, and distinguish the head under which this word falls.

Conjuratiōnem, notice the gender.

Civitāti. *H.* R. XII. 385. *A. & S.* R. XX. 223, Rem.

2. *B. & M.* R. XXVII. 809, and XXXIII. 831. *A.* R. VI. 1; § 51, III.

Copiis, *H.* R. XXXII. 432; XXI. 414, 7. *A. & S.* R. XXXVIII. 241; XLIV. 247, 2; 249, III. *B. & M.* R. LXVII. 982; XLII. 873, 876. *A.* R. XI. 56, 1; VIII. 2, 54, II. Note the difference of meaning between *copia*, sing. and *copiæ*, plur.

Perfacile esse, etc. The clause *totius . . . . potiri* is the subject of *esse* and *perfacile* agrees with it as a predicate adjective. *Esse* is dependent upon (object of) a verb of *saying* understood: *saying, that to gain the authority over the whole of Gaul would be very easy, since,* etc. *Esse, H.* 550. *A. & S.* 270. *B. & M.* 1118, 1148. *A.* 58, IV. *Potiri, H.* 549. *A. & S.* 269. *B. & M.* 1118, 1147. *A.* 58, IV. This is an instance of the *oratio obliqua*, the critical study of which will be necessary a few sections further on. Orgetorix, in speaking directly, would have said, "*It is very easy, since you surpass all in valor, to gain,* etc.

Omnibus. *H.* 386, under R. XII. *A. & S.* R. XXI. 244. *B. & M.* R. XXXII. 826. *A.* R. VI. 3. § 51, V.

Totius. *H.* 149. *A. & S.* 107. *B. & M.* 191. *A.* 16, I., last paragraph.

Imperio. *H.* R. XXV. 419, I. *A. & S.* R. XLII. 245. *B. & M.* R. XLIV. 880. *A.* R. VIII. 3, § 54, III. 2.

3. Bellandi. *H.* 563. *A. & S.* 275, II., Rem. 1. *B. & M.* 1327. *A.* 73, II.

Multitudine, note the gender.

Qui, has *fines* for its antecedent.

Passuum, partitive genitive.

Millia. *H.* 178. *A. & S.* 118, 6, (*a*). *B. & M.* 204. *A.* 18 3.

III.

PREPARATIONS OF THE HELVETII.

1. **Proficiscendum.** *H.* 565. *A.* & *S.* 275, II., Rem. 3. *B.* & *M.* 1337. *A.* 73, IV.

Quam maxĭmum. *H.* 170, 2. *A.* & *S.* 127, 4. *B.* & *M.* 229, 1003. *A.* 17, V. 5.

In itinĕre, *on the march.* Note the gender of *itinĕre.*

Conficiendas, gerundive.

Sibi. *H.* R. XVII. *A.* & *S.* R. XIX. *B.* & *M.* R. XL. *A.* R. VI. 1.

Satis, superlative wanting; comparative *satius.* *B.* & *M.*

2. **Profectiōnem,** note the gender.

Sibi (legatiōnem), dat. with compounds.

Catamantalĕdis, note the gender.

Annos. *H.* R. VIII. *A.* & *S.* R. XXXIII. *B.* & *M.* R. LXI. *A.* R. IX.

Popŭli, limits *senātu.*

Dumnorĭgi, dat. dependent upon *persuādet.*

Tempŏre. *H.* R. XXVIII. *A.* & *S.* R. L. *B.* & *M.* R. LXI. *A.* R. IX.

Ut, connects *persuādet* to *conarētur*—*persuādet Dumnorĭgi,* etc., *ut.*

3. **Perfacĭle factu,** etc., *esse* depends upon *probat,* and has what for its subject?—*probat illis, perficĕre conāta esse perfacĭle factu.*

Factu. *H.* 570. *A.* & *S.* R. LXXIX. 276, III. *B.* & *M.* R. CVII. 1365. *A.* R. XVII. § 74, II.

Conāta, object of *perficĕre.*

Obtentūrus esset. *H.* 227. *A.* & *S.* 162, 14. *B.* & *M.* 328. *A.* 40.

Esse (dubium), dependent upon *probat.*

Dubium, agrees with the clause following, which is the subject of *esse*.

Galliæ, partitive gen.

Plurĭmum possent, *were the most powerful.*

Illis, dative.

Conciliatūrum (esse).

Dant, *they give* (*i. e.* Orgetorix, Castĭcus, Dumnorix).

Regno occupāto, abl. absolute.

Galliæ. *H.* 409, 3. *A. & S.* 220, (4). *B. & M.* 882. *A.* 50, IV. 6.

Potīri, posse. What is their construction?

IV.

DEATH OF ORGETORIX.

1. **Indicium.** We should say in English, "*by informers.*"

Morĭbus. *H.* 414, 2. *A. & S.* 249, II.

Causam dicĕre, *to plead his cause;* imperative, *H.* 237. *A. & S.* 162, 4. *B. & M.* 323. *A.* 33, III. 2.

Damnātum, *if condemned*, participle agreeing with *eum* understood. *H.* 578, III. *A. & S.* 274, 3. *B. & M.* 1354. *A.* 72, 1.

Ut igni cremarētur, in apposition with *pœnam*, which with *sequi* is the subject of *oportēbat.*

Causæ dictiōnis, *for pleading his cause.* What kind of genitives are these?

Ne causam, etc., *rescued himself from pleading his cause* (*that he might not plead his cause*).

2. **Ob eam rem.** *H.* 414, (3), (1). *A. & S.* 247, Rem. 1. *B. & M.* 875. *A.* 54, I., middle.

Jus, object.

Ut, *as.*

Conscivĕrit, *conscisco.*

V.

CONTINUED PREPARATIONS OF THE HELVETII.

1. **Nihĭlo.** *H.* R. XXIV. *A. & S.* 256, Rem. 16. *B. & M.* R. LV. *A.* R. VIII. 4, § 54, V.

Domum. *H.* R. IX. *A. & S.* R. XXXIV. *B. & M.* R. LVII., LIX. *A.* R. X. § 55; III. 2. *Domus* and *rus* are construed like names of towns; declension of *domus*, *H.* 117. *A. & S.* 89. *B. & M.* 144. *A.* 12, 2.

Spe, abl. absolute.

Sublāta, *tollo.*

Paratiōres, predicate adj. with *essent.*

Subeunda. *A.* 73.

Mensium. *H.* 396, IV. *A. & S.* 211, Rem. 6. *B. & M.* R. XVI. *A.* 50, I. 2, 54, II. last paragraph.

Quemque. *H.* 191. *A. & S.* 138. *B. & M.* 251. *A.* 21, III.

Domo. *H.* R. XXVI. 424, 2. *A. & S.* R. LII. 255, Rem. 1. *B. & M.* R. LIX., LVIII. *A.* 55, III. 1.

2. **Usi,** *utor.*

Consilio. *H.* R. XXV., I. *A. & S.* R. XLII. *B. & M.* R. XLIV. *A.* R. VIII. 3, § 54, III.

Boiosque, object of *adsciscunt.*

Oppugnārant. *H.* 234. *A. & S.* 162, 7. *B. & M.* 315. *A.* 33, III.

Receptos, etc., *they receive and unite to themselves as allies* (*received to themselves, they unite to themselves*).

Socios. *H.* R. VI. *A. & S.* R. XXVII. 230, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* 715. *A.* R. I.

VI.

THE HELVETII PLAN A MARCH THROUGH THE PROVINCE.

The pupil should now commence and continue through the twelve succeeding sections the study of dependent clauses and sentences.

1. **Possent.** *H.* R. XL., II., 501, 481, II. 1. *A. & S.* R. LXV. 264, 6; 258, I. 2. *B. & M.* R. XCI.; R. LXXXIV. *A.* R. XIV. 58, II.; 65, IV. 2, 57.

Unum (iter), subject of *erat* understood.

Singŭli. *H.* 172, 3. *A. & S.* 119, III. *B. & M.* 207. *A.* 18, II.

Ducerentur. *H.* 501, I. 1. *A. & S.* 264, 12. *B. & M.* 1213. *A.* 65, IV. 2.

Possent. *H.* R. XL., I. *A. & S.* R. LX. *B. & M.* R. XCI. *A.* 65, I.

Locis. *H.* 422, 1, (1). *A. & S.* 254, Rem. 3. *B. & M.* 937, 2. *A.* 55, III. 5.

Vado. *A. & S.* R. XLV. *B. & M.* R. LXXIII.

2. **Finĭbus,** dative, governed by *proxĭmum.*

Persuasūros (esse), *that they either could prevail upon the Allobroges.*

Bono anĭmo, *kindly disposed* (*of good mind*). *H.* R. XXIX. *A. & S.* 211, Rem. 6. *B. & M.* R. XLVI. *A.* R. VIII. 2.

Viderentur. *H.* R. XLIII., II., XLVI. 527, 3. *A. & S.* R. LXVIII., LXVII. *B. & M.* R. CI. *A.* 63, I.; 67, II.

Coactūros (esse), dependent upon *existimābant.* *H.* 540, 543. *A. & S.* 268, 2; 258, I., Rem. 4, (b). *B. & M.* 1126, 1129, 1130. *A.* 57, IV.

It will be observed that the tense of the dependent

verbs *viderentur* and *paterentur* is determined by that of the principal verb *existimābant* and not by the infinitives; the latter have no time of their own.

Conveniant, subjunctive of *purpose* with the relative *quā*.

Ante, governs *Kalendas*.

Diem, takes the place of *die*, being attracted into the accusative by *ante*. — *Harkness*. "Often *ante diem* (a. d.) with an ordinal is used like a preposition governing an accusative." — *Allen*, 56, I., 4.

Kalendas. *H.* 708. *A. & S.* 326, 2. *B. & M.* 1526, 1527. *A.* 83.

VII.

THE HELVETII SEND AMBASSADORS TO CÆSAR.

1. **Nuntiātum esset**. *H.* R. XLIII. 518, II.; 481, IV. *A. & S.* R. LXIV. 258, Rem. 1. *B. & M.* R. XCIV. 1167. *A.* 62, I.; 57, II. This verb is connected by *quum* to *matūrat*, historical present, which is hence followed by historical tenses.

Eos — conāri, in apposition with *id*.

Urbe, Rome.

Et, connects *matūrat* and *contendit*.

Quam maxĭmis, etc., *by as long marches as he was able*.

Ad Genēvam, *into the vicinity of Genēva*. — *Harkness*.

Provinciæ — numĕrum. *H.* 384, II., 1. *A. & S.* 223, Rem. 2, (1), (b). *B. & M.* R. XXXIII. Compare R. XXXIX. *A.* 51, III., end.

2. **Mittunt**, what kind of a present?

Locum. *H.* 141. *A. & S.* 92, I., 2. *B. & M.* 186. *A.* 14, II., 1.

Dicĕrent. *H.* R. XL., II. *A. & S.* R. LXV., 264, 5. *B. & M.* R. XC. *A.* 64, I.

Habērent. *H.* 527, 517. *A.* & *S.* 266, 1. *B.* & *M.* 1291, 1255. *A.* 67, II., 63.

Liceat. *H.* 482, 3. *B.* & *M.* 1167. Why in the subjunctive mode?

3. Memoriā, abl. of means.

Occīsum (esse); so also *pulsum*, *missum*, *concedendum*.

Pūlsum, *pello*.

Concedendum (esse). *H.* 231. *A.* & *S.* 162, 15. *B.* & *M.* 329, 1305. *A.* 40, II.

Datā facultāte, abl. absolute.

Temperatūros (esse).

Itinĕris faciendi. Explain and find rules for this gerundive construction.

Convenīrent. *H.* 522, II. *A.* & *S.* R. LXIII. *B.* & *M.* R. XCII. *A.* 62, II.

Diem — sumptūrum. Notice that in quotations in the indirect discourse the principal clauses are in the infinitive and the subordinate in the subjunctive.

Vellent — reverterentur, subjunctives of condition. A more detailed explanation had better be deferred until the subject has been studied in the Grammar. *Reverterentur* is here a deponent verb.

VIII.

THE HELVETII ARE OPPOSED AND DRIVEN BACK.

1. Secum = *cum se*.

Millia. *H.* R. VIII. *A.* & *S.* R. XXXIII. *B.* & *M.* R. LXI. *A.* R. IV.

Pedum. *H.* 396, IV. *A.* & *S.* 211, Rem. 6. *B.* & *M.* R. XVI. *A.* 55, II., Rem.

Quo, *in order that;* expressive of purpose.

2. **Negat se,** *says that he cannot give (denies that he can give).*

More et exemplo, *consistently with the custom and example.*

Iter, *a passage.*

Facĕre, *to use.*

Prohibitūrum, has *se* understood, for its subject.

Spe. *H.* R. XXVII. *A. & S.* R. XLVIII., XXXIX. *B. & M.* R. LI., LXX. *A.* R. VIII. 5.

Si perrumpĕre, etc., literally, *having attempted if they were able to break through.*

Possent. *H.* R. XLV. *A. & S.* R. LXVI. *B. & M.* R. LXXXVII. *A.* 67, I., 1. Upon what does the tense depend?

An *alii* may be supplied after **dejecti,** in apposition with *Helvetii* and corresponding to *alii,* below; *some . . . . others.*

IX.

THE HELVETII DETERMINE TO PASS THROUGH THE COUNTRY OF THE SEQUANI.

1. **Sponte,** *of their own accord.*

Possent. *H.* 518, II. *A. & S.* R. LXIV. *B. & M.* XCIV. *A.* 62, I.

Mittunt, *sent* (historical present).

Eo deprecatōre, *by his intercession (he being intercessor).*

Impetrārent. An object is to be supplied. Why subjunctive?

Gratiā, ablative of cause.

Rebus. *H.* 384. *A. & S.* 223, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* R. XXXIII. *A.* R. VI. 1.

Sibi, governed by *obstrictas*.

2. **Obsidesque.** *Que* connects *impĕtrat* and *perfĭcit*.

Sequăni, subject of *dent* or *dant* understood.

X

CÆSAR SEEKS REËNFORCEMENTS FROM ITALY.

1. **Helvetiis.** *H.* 387. *A.* & *S.* 226. *B.* & *M.* R. XXX. 821. *A.* 51, VI.

Esse. What is its subject; also that of *renuntiātur?*

Quæ civĭtas, a common idiom; for *civitātis quæ*.

Fiĕret. *H.* R. XLVI. 527, 3. *A.* & *S.* R. LXVII. *B.* & *M.* R. CI. *A.* 66, I.

Ut — habēret. This clause is the subject of *futūrum esse*.

Habēret, subj. of result.

2. **Superiorĭbus**, notice the comparison; also below, that of

3. **Plurĭbus** (*complurĭbus*), **citeriōris, extrēmum, ulteriōris, primi.**

Ab, connects *pervēnit* and *Ocĕlo*.

Extrēmum, agrees with **oppĭdum** understood.

Provinciæ, limits *popŭli* (gen. sing.) understood. — *Andrews*.

XI.

THE ALLIES OF THE ROMANS COMPLAIN OF THE HELVETII.

1. **Suăque** = *et sua, and their possessions*, *H.* 441. *A.* & *S.* 205, Rem. 7, (2). *B.* & *M.* 658. *A.* 47, III.

Rogātum. *H.* R. L. 567. *A.* & *S.* R. LXXVII., LXXVIII. *B.* & *M.* R. CVI. 1364. *A.* R. XVII. 74, I.

Ita se, etc., *saying that they*, etc.

Vastāri depends upon *debuĕrint*. *A.* 57, IV., Rem.

Debuĕrint. *H.* 482, 2. *A.* & *S.* 258, II. (a). *B.* & *M.* 1169. The historical present is sometimes followed by a primary (or principal) tense in the subjunctive.

2. **Sibi.** *H.* 387. *A.* & *S.* R. XXIII. *B.* & *M.* R. XXX. *A.* R. VI. 4.

Solum, noun.

Nihil, noun, subject of *esse*.

Relĭqui. *H.* 396, III. 2. *A.* & *S.* 212, Rem. 3, N. 3. *B.* & *M.* R. XIX. *A.* 50, II.

Quibus. *H.* 453. *A.* & *S.* 206, (17). *B.* & *M.* 701. *A.* 48, IV.

Non expectandum (esse), *that he ought not to wait.*

XII.

CÆSAR DEFEATS THE TIGURINI.

1. **Fluat.** *H.* R. XLV. *A.* & *S.* R. LXVI. *B.* & *M.* R. LXXXVII. *A.* 67, I., 1.

Lintrĭbus, mark the gender.

Helvetios, subject of *transduxisse*.

Flumen — partes. *H.* 374, 6. *A.* & *S.* 233, (1). *B.* & *M.* 718. *A.* 52, III. (2).

Arărim. *H.* 85, III., 1. *A.* & *S.* 79 (b), 1. *B.* & *M.* 110. *A.* 11, I., 2.

2. **Silvas,** motion is implied, and hence the accusative.

Exisset, for *exiisset*.

Memoriā, abl. of time.

3. **Quæ pars civitātis.** The English idiom would be *ea pars quæ*. *H.* 438, 1. *A.* & *S.* 206, (3), (a). *B.* & *M.* 687. *A.* 48, III.

Ultus est, *ulsciscor*.

Quŏd ejus, etc. *Quŏd Tigurīni, eodem prœlio quo Cassium [interfecĕrant], interfecĕrant Lucium Pisōnem, legātum, avum Lucii Pisōnis, ejus socĕri.*

XIII.

THE HELVETII SEND AMBASSADORS TO CÆSAR.

The whole subject of the *oratio oblīqua* is treated at length in Table VI., and full explanations of this section given. Accordingly no notes on the indirect discourse are here made. The most thorough study of this topic is urged.

1. **Facto**, *fought (made)*.

Arăre. Some read **Arări.** *H.* 87. *A.* & *S.* 82, Exc. 2. *B.* & *M.* 110. *A.* 11, I., 2.

Quum id. *Quum intelligĕrent illum fecisse uno die id, quod.*

Transīrent. *H.* 495, 3. *A.* & *S.* 262, Rem. 1. *B.* & *M.* 1224. *A.* 70, 65.

2. **Incommŏdi.** *H.* R. XIX., II. *A.* & *S.* R. XIII. *B.* & *M.* R. XXIII. *A.* R. V. 3, § 50, IV.

3. **Insidiis.** *H.* R. XXV., II. *A.* & *S.* 245, II. *B.* & *M.* R. XLIV. *A.* R. VIII. 3.

XIV.

CÆSAR DEMANDS SATISFACTION FOR INJURIES. THE HELVETII REFUSE.

1. **Commemorassent**, for *commemoravissent.*

Eo — quo. *H.* R. XXIV. *A.* & *S.* 256, Rem. 16. *B.* & *M.* R. LV. *A.* 54, V.

Injuriæ — sibi. *H.* 399, 6. *A.* & *S.* 213, Rem. 7. *B.* & *M.* 864. *A.* 50, III. 2; 51.

Deceptum (esse), has for its subject *eum* understood, referring to the Roman people.

Commissum, has for its subject *quidquam* understood.

2. **Quòd.** This is strictly a relative and an accusative of specification.

Vellet, the subject here changes to *ille*, Cæsar.

Nŭm. *H.* 346, II., 1. *A. & S.* 198, 11, Rem. (b). *B. & M.* 1103, etc. *A.* 71, I.

3. **Deos.** *H.* 45, 6. *A. & S.* 53. *B. & M.* 67. *A.* 10, 7.

4. **Sint.** *H.* R. XLII. *A. & S.* 263, 5, Rem. 1. *B. & M.* XCIX. *A.* 61, II.

Dăre, notice the quantity of the penult.

Consuevĕrint, notice the tense. *A.* 57, I.

XV.

CÆSAR MARCHES TOWARD THE HELVETII.

1. **Coactum habēbat**, *had collected (had, having been collected)*. See Part I. XXXVI.

Subsistĕre, depends upon *cœpērunt*.

2. **Satis habēbat**, *held it sufficient for the present.* What is the object of *habēbat?*

Dies, accusative of extent of time and space.

Circĭter, adverb.

Amplius, used as the subject of *interesset — not a greater (space) than*, etc.

Quinis aut senis. The distributives denote that on each of the fifteen days the same distance was kept.

Millĭbus. *H.* R. XXIII. *A. & S.* R. LIII. *B. & M.* R. XLVIII. *A.* R. VIII. 4.

XVI.

THE ÆDUI FAIL TO FURNISH SUPPLIES. CÆSAR COMPLAINS.

1. **Cæsar.** *H.* 545, 1. *A. & S.* 209, Rem. 5. *B. & M.* 1137. *A.* 59.

Æduos, frumentum. *H.* R. VII. *A. & S.* R. XXVIII. *B. & M.* R. XIII. *A.* R. VII. 2.

Flagitāre, *kept demanding;* this word denotes here repeated action. As the historical infinitives are used like the imperfect, they have historical tenses depending upon them.

Frigŏra, *on account of the cold climate;* the singular would refer more to coldness in the abstract. — *Harkness.*

Frumento, ablative with *uti.*

Flumĭne. *H.* R. XXI. 414, 3. *A. & S.* R. XLIV. 247, 3. *B. & M.* R. XLII. *A.* 55, IV.

Uti, *utor.*

Quibus, has *Helvetii* for its antecedent.

Diem ex die, etc. *The Ædui kept putting him off* (ducĕre) *day after day: they said* (dicĕre) *it was being collected,* etc.

Conferri, comportāri, etc., objects of *dicĕre.*

2. **Oportēret,** — What is its subject?

Divitiăco et Lisco, appositives with *prinçipĭbus.*

Qui, has *Lisco* for its antecedent.

Magistratui, governed by *præ-erat.*

Quem, *whom (which officer); case, H.* R. VI. *A. & S.* R. XXVII.

Vergobrĕtum. *B. & M.* 715. *A.* 46.

Emi, present infinitive pass.

Posset, has *frumentum* understood for its subject.

Hostĭbus, abl. absolute.

Sublevētur, employed in this tense to give a more lively effect to the narrative, after the historical present *accūsat*.

Presertim, modifies *queritur*.

Susceperit, sit destitūtus. *H.* 481, IV. *A. & S.* 258, Rem. 1, (b). *B. & M.* 1167, 1168. *A.* 57, I.

XVII.

RESPONSE OF THE CHIEF MAGISTRATE OF THE ÆDUI.

1. **Quod**, has for its antecedent *id* understood.

Valeat. In this section is given an *oratio oblīqua*, where the dependent clauses take primary tenses following the historical present. This verb, with *possint* also, would be in the subjunctive (of result) in the *oratio recta*.

Magistrātus. *H.* 417, 1. *A. & S.* 256, Rem. 3. *B. & M.* 897. This word may be considered as the subject of *sunt* understood.

Si — possint — præferre. Both clauses of this hypothetical sentence take the indicative in the *oratio recta*.

Superavĕrint, future perfect in the direct discourse.

Sint ereptūri, subjunctive after *quin*. *A. & S.* 260, Rem. 7, (1), (2).

2. **Quæque**, *and whatever: quæ* is an indefinite pronoun.

Gerantur, relative of result.

Enunciārit, for *enunciavĕrit*.

A close study of the examples given in the Table will prepare the learner to analyze the *oratio oblīqua* in this section, change it to the *oratio recta*, and explain the construction.

In changing, the student should be careful to notice whether there be any verbs that require from their connection, the subjunctive in the *oratio recta*.

XVIII.

THE TREACHERY OF DUMNORIX EXPOSED.

1. **Quærit ex solo,** = *ex eo solo.* *H.* 374, 3, (3). *A. & S.* 231, Rem. 2. *B. & M.* 737. *A.* 52, III., (1) end.

Ipsum esse, etc., — *that Dumnorix was the very one.*

Audaciā, abl. of characteristic; *a man of the greatest,* etc.

Cupĭdum, agreeing with *Dumnorĭgem.*

Pretio. *H.* R. XXII. *A. & S.* R. XLIX. *B. & M.* R. XLV. *A.* 54, IX.

Redempta, agrées with *portoria.*

Illo licente, *when he bid, no one dared to,* etc.

Audeat, a semi-deponent verb.

2. **Et — et,** *both — and.*

Domi. *H.* 424, 2. *A. & S.* 221, Rem. 3. *B & M.* R. LIX. *A.* 55, III., 3.

Largĭter posse, *he was very influential (largely).*

Causā, *for the sake of this influence,* i. e., *of maintaining it.*

Biturigibus. *A. & S.* 241, Rem. 5. *B. & M.* 991. *A.* 56, I. (end).

Collocasse (*matrimonium* or *nuptum*), for *collocavisse.*

Sorōrem ex matre, *sister on his mother's side, half sister.*

Nuptum, *in marriage;* supine.

Deminuta (*sit*).

3. **Imperio,** abl. of cause, — *Harkness:* ablative absolute, — *Andrews, Allen.* *A. & S.* 257, Rem. 7. *A.* 54, X., Rem.

Quærendo Cæsar, etc. *Cæsar on making inquiry touching the fact that,* etc.

Diebus. *H.* 427, 2. *A. & S.* 253, Rem. 1. *B. & M.* 954. *A.* 55, I.

Factum (esse).

Auxilio — Cæsări. *H.* R. XIII. *A. & S.* R. XXIV. *B. & M.* R. XXXVIII. *A.* § 51, VII.

XIX.

CÆSAR CONFERS WITH DIVITIACUS CONCERNING DUMNÒRIX.

The learner will now return to the study of etymology. It is recommended that the analysis of nouns and verbs be pursued with some care.

1. Quòd. These clauses introduced by *quòd* explain *certissimæ res.*

Injussu. *H.* 414, 2. *A. & S.* 247, 1, Rem. 2, (a). *B. & M.* R. XLII. *A.* 54, I.

Civitātis, limits *injussu* understood.

Inscientibus ipsis, *without their knowledge* (*they themselves not knowing*).

Accusaretur. Notice the change in the tense: *that he was then under accusation*, is the force of the imperfect.

Satis causæ, *a sufficiency of reason.*

2. Rebus, dative.

Unum, *one argument*, explained by *quòd . . . . cognoverat.*

Cognoverat. The indicative after *quòd* is here used because the statement is made on Cæsar's own authority. The subjunctive is used in *traduxisset*, etc., above, because Cæsar based his knowledge of the facts there stated on the authority of other people.

Ne, *lest.* *H.* 492, 4, (1). *A. & S.* 262, Rems. 5, 7. *B. & M.* 1215. *A.* 64, III.

Ejus, Dumnorix.

3. **Conaretur.** *H.* R. XLIV., II. *A. & S.* R. LXII. *B. & M.* R. XCIII. *A.* 62, II.

Cui summam, etc., *in whom he reposed the highest confidence in all things.*

Rerum, objective genitive.

Ipso, Divitiacus.

Eo, Dumnorix.

Apud se, *in his own presence* (Cæsar's).

Sine ejus, *without offense to his* (Divitiacus') *feelings.*

Ipse, Cæsar.

Eo, Dumnorix.

XX.

CÆSAR PARDONS DUMNORIX ON THE ENTREATY OF DIVITIACUS.

1. **Quid,** indefinite pronoun.

Se. *H.* 417, 1. *A. & S.* 256, Rem. 3. *B. & M.* 897. *A.* 67, V.

Dolōris, genitive of the whole after *plus.*

Quum ipse — crevisset = *quum ipse* (Divitiăcus) *gratiā plurimùm domi atque in reliquā Galliā* (*posset*) (*et*) *ille* (Dumnorix) *minimùm propter adolescentiam posset,* (Dumnorix) *per se* (Divitiăcus) *crevisset.* What is the *oratio recta* of this and the other parts of the quotation?

Opibus ac nervis, abl. governed by *uteretur.*

Suam, Divitiăcus. *Suam,* together with *ipse* and *se* above in the *oratio recta* of course will be in the first person.

2. **Quid,** subject of *accidisset.*

Eum (locum), used adjectively.

Apud eum, *with him* (Cæsar).

Neminem, etc., *no one would suppose that it had not been done by his consent.*

Tanti. *H.* 402, 1. *A. & S.* R. XI. *B. & M.* R. XXV. *A.* 54, IX. 1.

Voluntati, *for the sake of his* (Divitiacus'), etc.

Reipublicæ, genitive.

3. Præterĭta, *the past.*

XXI.

CÆSAR APPROACHES THE HELVETIAN CAMP.

The student of Bullions & Morris can choose between the exposition of Dec. III. in the Grammar, and that in Table IV. The table is more full in detail, but is essentially the same as the Grammar. In case the Table be preferred, omit 73–108 of the Grammar, except for consultation.

1. Exploratoribus. Table IV. § 5, A. II. (*dolor*).

Hostes. Table IV. § 5, B. I. (*auris*).

Consedisse. Notice the construction of the infinitive with *certior factus.*

Facilem esse. Supply *ascensum.*

Legionibus. Table IV. § 5, A. II. (*actio*).

Ducibus, in apposition with *iis.*

Iter. Table IV. § 5. Rules, Special Remarks, 3.

Consilii. *H.* R. XVIII. *A. & S.* 212, Rem. 3. *B. & M.* R. XXI. *A.* 50, I., 1.

Rei. *H.* R. XVII. *A. & S.* R. X. *B. & M.* R. XVIII. *A.* R. V. 3.

XXII.

THE BATTLE DELAYED BY A MISTAKE OF CONSIDIUS.

1. Summus mons. *H.* 441, 6. *A. & S.* 205, Rem. 17. *B. & M.* 662. *A.* 47, VIII.

Ipse, Cæsar.

Cognitus esset, connected back to *abesset*, and in subjunctive by the same law.

Insignibus. Table IV. § 5, B. II.

2. Ipsius, Cæsar's.

Prope, governs *castra*.

Multo die, *late in the day*.

Quod non vidisset, etc., *had reported to him as seen what he had not seen* (*as a thing seen that which*, etc.).

Viso, agreeing with a noun or pronoun understood.

XXIII.

CÆSAR TURNS ASIDE TO BIBRACTE. THE HELVETII FOLLOW.

1. Diēi. *H.* 411, 2. *A. & S.* 212, Rem. 4, note 6. *B. & M.* R. LXXII. *A.* 50 (end).

Rei, dative with compounds. — *Harkness:* advantage and disad. — *Allen.*

Bibracte, accusative.

2. Eo magis, *the more on this account*, *because*, etc.

XXIV.

THE ARMIES PREPARE FOR BATTLE.

The stem of an adjective will be determined by the same rules as that of a noun.

1. Id animum. *H.* 374, 6. *A. & S.* 233, (1). *B. & M.* 718.

Legionum. *A.* 54, II. (end).

Compleri, depends upon *jussit*.

Eum (locum).

Phalange factā, soldiers densely crowded together with

their shields locked together over their heads for a protection against the darts of the enemy.

Sub, *toward.*

XXV.

THE BATTLE OF BIBRACTE.

The special work for the remainder of the book should be the analysis and formation of the different parts of the verb. Students of Harkness and Bullions & Morris will find ample treatment of the subject in the Grammar.

Those studying Andrews & Stoddard or Allen, should, in addition to their Grammar, make use of Table II.

1. **Suo**, supply *equo remoto.*

Gallis — impedimento. *H.* R. XIII. *A. & S.* R. XXIV. *B. & M.* R. XXXVIII. *A.* 51, VII.

Diu jactato, *after brandishing the arm about for a long time.*

Præoptarent, *preferred.*

Corpore, abl. of manner.

2. **Pedem referre**, *to retreat (withdraw the foot).*

Latĕre, *on the exposed flank;* exposed because the shield was carried on the other (left) side; hence generally meaning right flank. *Latĕre*, abl. of place, preposition omitted.

Conversa signa, literally, *advanced their standards, turned about, in two divisions* (or *lines*).

Acies, subject of a verb understood, — *advanced.*

Victis, agrees with *iis*, understood.

Tertia (*acies*).

Venientes, agrees with *eos* understood, the Boii and Tulingi.

Ut, connects the verb understood, of which *acies* is the subject, to *exciperet;* same construction with *resisteret.*

XXVI.

DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII.

1. **Ancipiti prœlio,** *in a doubtful battle* (rather than *double*). Harkness and Allen, however, give *double*.

Pugnatum est, *they fought* (literally, *it was fought*). *H.* 301, 3. *A. & S.* 184, 2, (b). *B. & M.* 453. *A.* 39, 5.

Alteri, (the Helvetii) — **Alteri** (the Boii and Tulingi).

Quum, *although.*

Ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*

2. **Impedimentis,** *potior* governs the ablative.

Filiis. *H.* 398, 4, (2). *A. & S.* 212, Rem. 2. Note 4. *B. & M.* 775. *A.* 50, II. (end).

Nocte. *H.* 378, 1, (1). *A. & S.* 236, note 1. *B. & M.* 950, 951. *A.* 55, I., 1.

Helvetios, object of a verb understood. What mode and tense of *habeo* should be employed?

Habiturum, depends upon a verb of *saying* understood.

Triduo, *three days having elapsed.*

XXVII.

THE HELVETII SURRENDER. ESCAPE OF THE CANTON VERBIGENUS.

1. **Qui quum,** *when these.*

Eos, the Helvetii.

2. **Conquiruntur.** According to Prof. Whitney, we may say, — *are being sought out.*

Perterriti, agrees with *millia.* *H.* 438, 6. *A. & S.* 205, Rem. 3, (3). *B. & M.* 678. *A.* 47, II. (3).

Fugam, subject of *posse.*

XXVIII.

CAPTURE OF THE FUGITIVES. CONDITIONS TO THE CONQUERED.

1. **Resciit**, *rescisco.*

Reductos, agrees with *eos* understood.

2. **Boios**, — *concessit Æduis petentibus ut collocarent Boios in suis finibus, quod (Boii) erant*, etc. *Ut collocarent* depends both upon *concessit* and *petentibus* as their object. — *Harkness.*

Virtute, abl. of characteristic.

Quibus, Boii.

Illi, Ædui.

Atque, *as they themselves possessed (were).*

XXIX.

THE NUMBERS OF THE HELVETII.

1. **Relatæ**, *refero.*

Ratio, *a computation showing what number*, etc.

Qui, used adjectively.

Pueri, subject of some verb understood.

Summa, a noun.

Ad, used adverbially, — *about.*

Qui, has *millia* following as its antecedent. *H.* 445, 5. *A. & S.* 206, (11), (a). *B. & M.* 698.

Millia (*nonaginta*, etc.), subject of *erant* or *fuerint* understood.

Fuerunt. *H.* 462. *A. & S.* 209, Rem. 9. *B. & M.* 679.

TABLES.

TABLE I.

ENDINGS OF VERBS IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

A.

§ 1. Personal Endings.

ACTIVE VOICE.

S. 1.	m [o, ī], *I*,	P. 1.	mŭs, *we*,
2.	s, (stī) *thou*,	2.	tĭs, *ye* or *you*,
3.	t *he*.	3.	nt, *they*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

S. 1.	r, *I*,	P. 1.	mŭr, *we*,
2.	rĭs, rĕ, *thou*,	2.	mĭni, *ye* or *you*,
3.	tŭr, *he*,	3.	ntŭr, *they*.

B. TABLE OF

§ 2. Present System. Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Example. — Am-ō, *I am loving* or *I love;* Rĕg-ĭmŭs, *we are ruling, we rule.*

SINGULAR NUMBER.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	ăm	-ō, *I am* (*loving*),	-ās, *thou art* —	-ăt, *he is* —
2.	mŏn	-eō, (*advising*),	-ēs,	-ĕt,
3.	rĕg	-ō (*ruling*),	-ĭs,	-ĭt,
4.	aud	-iō (*hearing*),	-īs,	-ĭt.

PLURAL.

1.	am	-āmŭs, *we are* —	-ātĭs, *ye* or *you are* —	-ant, *they are* —
2.	mon	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent,
3.	reg	-ĭmŭs,	-ĭtĭs,	-unt,
4.	aud	-īmŭs,	-ītĭs,	-iunt.

Imperfect Tense.

Example. — Mon-ēbās, *thou wast advising* or *thou advisedst.*

SINGULAR.

1.	am	-ābăm, *I was* (*loving*),	-ābās, *thou wast* —	-ābăt, *he was* —
2.	mon	-ēbăm, (*advising*),	-ēbās,	-ēbăt,
3.	reg	-ēbăm, (*ruling*),	-ēbās,	-ēbăt,
4.	aud	-iēbăm, (*hearing*),	-iēbās,	-iēbăt.

PLURAL.

1.	am	-ābāmŭs, *we were* —	-ābātĭs, *ye* or *you were* —	-ābant, *they were* —
2.	mon	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant,
3.	reg	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant,
4.	aud	-iēbāmŭs,	-iēbātĭs,	-iēbant.

Future Tense.

Example. — Reg-ĕt, *he will rule;* Mon-ēbit, *he will advise.*

SINGULAR.

1.	am	-ābō, *I will* (*love*),	-ābĭs, *thou wilt* —	-ābĭt, *he will* —
2.	mon	-ēbō, (*advise*)	-ēbĭs,	-ēbĭt,
3.	reg	-ăm, (*rule*),	-ēs,	-ĕt,
4.	aud	-iăm, (*hear*),	-iēs,	-iĕt.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

§ 2. Present System. Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Example. — Am-ŏr, *I am loved;* Rĕg-ĭmŭr, *we are ruled.*

SINGULAR NUMBER.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.		2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	ăm	-ŏr, *I am*	(*loved*),	-ārĭs *or* ārĕ, *thou art* —	-ātŭr, *he is* —
2.	mŏn	-eŏr,	(*advised*),	-ērĭs *or* ērĕ,	-ētŭr,
3.	rĕg	-ŏr,	(*ruled*),	-ĕrĭs *or* ĕrĕ,	-ĭtŭr,
4.	aud	-iŏr,	(*heard*),	-īrĭs *or* īrĕ,	-ītŭr.

PLURAL.

1.	am	-āmŭr, *we are* —	-āmĭnī, *ye* or *you are* —	-antŭr, *they are* —
2.	mon	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnī,	-entŭr,
3.	reg	-ĭmŭr,	-ĭmĭnī,	-untŭr,
4.	aud	-īmŭr,	-īmĭnī,	-iuntŭr.

Imperfect Tense.

Example. — Mon-ēbārĭs, *thou wast advised.*

SINGULAR.

1.	am	-ābăr, *I was*	(*loved*),	-ābārĭs *or* ābāre, *thou wast* —	-ābātŭr, *he*
2.	mon	-ēbăr,	(*advised*),	-ēbārĭs *or* ēbārĕ,	-ēbātŭr, [*was* —
3.	reg	-ēbăr,	(*ruled*),	-ēbārĭs *or* ēbārĕ,	-ēbātŭr,
4.	aud	-iēbăr,	(*heard*),	-iēbārĭs *or* iēbārĕ,	-iēbātŭr.

PLURAL.

1.	am	-ābāmŭr, *we were* —	-ābāmĭnī, *ye* or *you were* —	-ābantŭr, *they*
2.	mon	-ēbāmŭr,	-ēbāmĭnī,	-ēbantŭr, [*were* —
3.	reg	-ēbāmŭr,	-ēbāmĭnī,	-ēbantŭr,
4.	aud	-iēbāmŭr,	-iēbāmĭnī,	-iēbantŭr.

Future Tense.

Example. — Reg-ētŭr, *he shall* or *will be ruled;* Mon-ēbĭtŭr, *he will be advised.*

SINGULAR.

1.	am	-ābŏr, *I will be*	(*loved*),	-ābĕrĭs *or* ābĕre, *thou wilt be* —	-ābĭtŭr, *he*
2.	mon	-ēbŏr,	(*advised*),	-ēbĕrĭs *or* ēbĕrĕ,	-ēbĭtŭr, [*will be* —
3.	reg	-ăr,	(*ruled*),	-ĕrĭs *or* ĕrĕ,	-ētŭr,
4.	aud	-iăr,	(*heard*),	-iērĭs *or* iērĕ,	-iētŭr.

§ 2. Present System. Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Future Tense — continued.

PLURAL.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	am	-ābĭmŭs, *we will* —	-ābĭtĭs, *ye* or *you will* —	-ābunt, *they will* —
2.	mon	-ēbĭmŭs,	-ēbĭtĭs,	-ēbunt,
3.	reg	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent,
4.	aud	-iēmus,	-iētĭs,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Example. — Aud-iăt, *he may* or *can hear.*

SINGULAR.

1.	am	-ĕm, *I may* (*love*),	-ēs, *thou mayst* —	-ĕt, *he may* —
2.	mon	-eăm, (*advise*),	-eās,	-eăt,
3.	reg	-ăm, (*rule*),	-ās,	-ăt,
4.	aud	-iăm, (*hear*),	-iās,	-iăt.

PLURAL.

1.	am	-ēmŭs, *we may* —	-ētĭs, *ye* or *you may* —	-ent, *they may* —
2.	mon	-eāmŭs,	-eātĭs,	-eant,
3.	reg	-āmŭs,	-ātĭs,	-ant,
4.	aud	-iāmŭs,	-iātĭs,	-iant,

Imperfect Tense.

Example. — Am-ārĕm, *I might, could, would,* or *should love.*

SINGULAR.

1.	am	-ārĕm, *I might* (*love*),	-ārēs, *thou mightst* —	-ārĕt, *he might* —
2.	mon	-ērĕm, (*advise*)	-ērēs,	-ērĕt,
3.	reg	-ĕrĕm, (*rule*),	-ĕrēs,	-ĕrĕt,
4.	aud	-īrĕm, (*hear*),	-īrēs,	-īrĕt.

PLURAL.

1.	am	-ārēmŭs, *we might* —	-ārētĭs, *ye* or *you might* —	-ārent, *they might* —
2.	mon	-ērēmŭs,	-ērētĭs,	-ērent,
3.	reg	-ĕrēmŭs,	-ĕrētĭs,	-ĕrent,
4.	aud	-īrēmŭs,	-īrētĭs,	-īrent.

§ 2. Present System. Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Present Tense — continued.

PLURAL.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	am	-ăbĭmŭr, *we will be* —	-ăbĭmĭnī, *ye* or *you will be* —	-ăbuntŭr, *they will be* —
2.	mon	-ēbĭmŭr,	-ēbĭmĭnī,	-ēbuntŭr,
3.	reg	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnī,	-entŭr,
4.	aud	-iēmŭr,	-iēmĭnī,	-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Example. — Aud-iātŭr, *he may* or *can be heard.*

SINGULAR.

1.	am	-ĕr, *I may be (loved),*	-ērĭs *or* ērĕ, *thou mayst be* —	-ētŭr, *he may be* —
2.	mon	-eăr, (*advised*),	-eārĭs *or* eārĕ,	-eātŭr,
3.	reg	-ăr, (*ruled*),	-ārĭs *or* ārĕ,	-ātŭr,
4.	aud	-iăr, (*heard*),	-iārĭs *or* iārĕ,	-iātŭr.

PLURAL.

1.	am	-ēmŭr, *we may be* —	-ēmĭnī, *ye* or *you may be* —	-entŭr, *they may be* —
2.	mon	-eāmŭr,	-eāmĭnī,	-eantŭr,
3.	reg	-āmŭr,	-āmĭnī,	-antŭr,
4.	aud	-iāmŭr,	-iāmĭnī,	-iantŭr.

Imperfect Tense.

Example. — Am-ārēmŭr, *we might, could, would,* etc., *be loved.*

SINGULAR.

1.	am	-ārĕr, *I might be (loved),*	-ārērĭs *or* ārērĕ, *thou mightst be* —	-ārētŭr, *he might be* —
2.	mon	-ērĕr, (*advised*),	-ērērĭs *or* ērērĕ,	-ĕrētŭr,
3.	reg	-ĕrĕr, (*ruled*),	-ĕrērĭs *or* ĕrērĕ,	-ĕrētŭr,
4.	aud	-īrĕr, (*heard*),	-īrērĭs *or* īrērĕ,	-īrētŭr.

PLURAL.

1.	am	-ārēmŭr, *we might be* —	-ārēmĭnī, *ye* or *you might be* —	-ārĕntur, *they might be* —
2.	mon	-ērēmŭr,	-ērēmĭnī,	-ērentŭr,
3.	reg	-ĕrēmŭr,	-ĕrēmĭnī,	-ĕrentŭr,
4.	aud	-īrēmŭr,	-īrēmĭnī,	-īrentŭr.

§ 2. Present System. Active Voice.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	am	–	-ā, *love thou.*	–
2.	mon	–	-ē, *advise thou.*	–
3.	reg	–	-ĕ, *rule thou.*	–
4.	aud	–	-ī, *hear thou.*	–

PLURAL.

1.	am	–	-ātĕ, *love ye.*	–
2.	mon	–	-ētĕ, *advise ye.*	–
3.	reg	–	-ĭtĕ, *rule ye.*	–
4.	aud	–	-ītĕ, *hear ye.*	–

Future Tense.

SINGULAR.

1.	am	–	-ātō, *thou shalt* (*love*),	-ātō, *he shall* (*love*).
2.	mon	–	-ētō, (*advise*),	-ētō, (*advise*).
3.	reg	–	-ĭtō, (*rule*),	-ĭtō, (*rule*).
4.	aud	–	-ītō, (*hear*),	-ītō, (*hear*).

PLURAL.

1.	am	–	-ātōtĕ, *ye shall* (*love*),	-antō, *they shall* (*love*).
2.	mon	–	-ētōtĕ, (*advise*),	-entō, (*advise*).
3.	reg	–	-ĭtōtĕ, (*rule*),	-untō, (*rule*).
4.	aud	–	-ītōtĕ, (*hear*)	-iuntō, (*hear*).

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

1. am-ārĕ, *to love.*
2. mon-ērĕ, *to advise.*
3. reg-ĕrĕ, *to rule.*
4. aud-īrĕ, *to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

Present.

1. am-ans, *loving.*
2. mon-ens, *advising.*
3. reg-ens, *ruling.*
4. aud-iens, *hearing.*

GERUND.

1. am-andī, *of loving.*
2. mon-endī, *of advising.*
3. reg-endī, *of ruling.*
4. aud-iendī, *of hearing.*

§ 2. Present System. Passive Voice.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	am	–	-ārĕ, *be thou* (*loved*).	–
2.	mon	–	-ērĕ, *be thou* (*advised*).	–
3.	reg	–	-ĕrĕ, *be thou* (*ruled*).	–
4.	aud	–	-īrĕ, *be thou* (*heard*).	–

PLURAL.

1.	am	–	-āmĭnī, *be ye* (*loved*).	–
2.	mon	–	-ēmĭnī, *be ye* (*advised*).	–
3.	reg	–	-ĭmĭnī, *be ye* (*ruled*).	–
4.	aud	–	-īmĭnī, *be ye* (*heard*).	–

Future Tense.

SINGULAR.

1.	am	–	-ātŏr, *thou shalt be* (*loved*),	-ātŏr, *he shall be* (*loved*).
2.	mon	–	-ētŏr, (*advised*),	-ētŏr, (*advised*).
3.	reg	–	-ĭtŏr, (*ruled*),	-ĭtŏr, (*ruled*).
4.	aud	–	-ītŏr, (*heard*),	-ītŏr, (*heard*).

PLURAL.

1.	am	–	–	-antŏr, *they shall be* (*loved*).
2.	mon	–	–	-entŏr, (*advised*).
3.	reg	–	–	-untŏr, (*ruled*).
4.	aud	–	–	-iuntŏr, (*heard*).

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

1. am-ārī, *to be loved.*
2. mon-ērī, *to be advised.*
3. reg-ī, *to be ruled.*
4. aud-īrī, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future.

1. am-andŭs, *to be loved.*
2. mon-endŭs, *to be advised.*
3. reg-endŭs, *to be rulea.*
4. aud-iendŭs, *to be heard.*

[Note. — Verbs in *io* of Conj. III. have certain endings like Conj. IV. See *H.* 213. *A. & S.* 159. *B. & M.* 294. *A.* 30, III.]

B. TABLE OF

§ 3. Perfect System. Active Voice.

[In the Perfect System the endings are the same for all the conjugations.]

INDICATIVE MODE.

Perfect Tense.

Example. — Monu-ĭt, *he has advised* or *he advised.*

SINGULAR.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	amāv	-ī, *I have* (*loved*),	-istī, *thou hast* —	-ĭt, *he has* —
2.	monu	-ī, (*advised*),	-istī,	-ĭt,
3.	rex	-ī, (*ruled*),	-istī,	-ĭt,
4.	audīv	-ī, (*heard*),	-istī,	-ĭt.

PLURAL.

1.	amāv	-ĭmŭs, *we have* —	-istĭs, *ye* or *you have* —	-ērunt *or* ērĕ, *they have* —
2.	monu	-ĭmŭs,	-istĭs,	-ērunt *or* ērĕ,
3.	rex	-ĭmŭs,	-istĭs,	-ērunt *or* ērĕ,
4.	audīv	-ĭmŭs,	-istis,	-ērunt *or* ērĕ.

Pluperfect Tense.

Example. — Rex-ĕrant, *they had ruled.*

SINGULAR.

1.	amāv	-ĕrăm, *I had* (*loved*),	-ĕrās, *thou hadst* —	-ĕrăt, *he had* —
2.	monu	-ĕrăm, (*advised*),	-ĕrās,	-ĕrăt,
3.	rex	-ĕrăm, (*ruled*),	-ĕrās,	-ĕrăt,
4.	audīv	-ĕrăm, (*heard*),	-ĕrās,	-ĕrăt.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

§ 4. Supine System. Passive Voice.

[In the Supine System the endings are the same for all the conjugations.]

INDICATIVE MODE.

Perfect Tense.

Example. — Monĭt-ŭs est, *he has been ruled* or *he was ruled.*

SINGULAR.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	amāt	-ŭs sum, *I have been (loved),*	ēs, *thou hast been —*	est, *he has been —*
2.	monĭt	-ŭs sum, *(advised),*	ēs,	est,
3.	rect	-ŭs sum, *(ruled),*	ēs,	est,
4.	audīt	-ŭs sum, *(heard),*	ēs,	est.

PLURAL.

1.	amāt	-ī sŭmŭs, *we have been —*	estĭs, *ye* or *you have been —*	sunt, *they have been —*
2.	monĭt	-ī sŭmŭs,	estĭs,	sunt,
3.	rect	-ī sŭmŭs,	estĭs,	sunt,
4.	audīt	-ī sŭmŭs,	estĭs,	sunt.

Pluperfect Tense.

Example. — Rect-ī ĕrant, *they had been ruled.*

SINGULAR.

1.	amāt	-ŭs ĕrăm, *I had been (loved),*	ĕrās, *thou hadst been —*	ĕrăt, *he had been —*
2.	monĭt	-ŭs ĕrăm, *(advised),*	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
3.	rect	-ŭs ĕrăm, *(ruled),*	ĕrās,	ĕrăt,
4.	audīt	-ŭs ĕrăm, *(heard),*	ĕrās,	ĕrăt.

B. TABLE OF

§ 3. Perfect System. Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Pluperfect Tense — continued.

PLURAL.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	amāv	-ĕrāmŭs, *we had* —	-ĕrātĭs, *ye* or *you had* —	-ĕrant, *they had* —
2.	monu	-ĕrāmŭs,	-ĕrātĭs,	-ĕrant,
3.	rex	-ĕramŭs,	-ĕrātĭs,	-ĕrant,
4.	audīv	-ĕrāmŭs,	-ĕrātĭs,	-ĕrant.

Future Perfect Tense.

Example. — Audiv-ĕrŏ, *I shall* or *will have heard.*

SINGULAR.

1.	amāv	-ĕrŏ, *I shall have* (*loved*),	-ĕrĭs, *thou shalt have* —	-ĕrĭt, *he shall have* —
2.	monu	-ĕrŏ, (*advised*),	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt,
3.	rex	-ĕrŏ, (*ruled*),	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt,
4.	audīv	-ĕrŏ, (*heard*),	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt.

PLURAL.

1.	amāv	-ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have* —	-ĕrĭtĭs, *ye* or *you shall have* —	-ĕrĭnt, *they shall have* —
2.	monu	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrĭnt,
3.	rex	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrĭnt,
4.	audīv	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrĭnt.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

§ 4. Supine System. Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Pluperfect Tense — continued.

PLURAL.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	amāt -ī,	ĕrāmŭs, *we had been* —	ĕrātĭs, *ye* or *you had been* —	ĕrant, *they had been* —
2.	monĭt -ī	ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant,
3.	rect -ī	ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant,
4.	audīt -ī	ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.

Future Perfect Tense.

Example. — Audīt-ŭs ero, *I shall* or *will have been heard.*

SINGULAR.

1.	amāt -ŭs	ĕrō, *I shall have been (loved),*	ĕrĭs, *thou shalt have been* —	ĕrĭt, *he shall have been* —
2.	monĭt -ŭs	ĕrō, (*advised*),	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
3.	rect -ŭs	ĕrō, (*ruled*),	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt,
4.	audīt -ŭs	ĕrō, (*heard*),	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt.

PLURAL.

1.	amāt -ī	ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been* —	-ĕrĭtĭs, *ye* or *you shall have been* —	ĕrunt, *they shall have been* —
2.	monĭt -ī	ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrunt,
3.	rect -ī	ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrunt,
4.	audīt -ī	ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrunt.

B. TABLE OF

§ 3. Perfect System. Active Voice.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Perfect Tense.

Example. — Rex-ĕrĭt, *he may* or *can have ruled.*

SINGULAR.

Cj.	*Stem.*	*1st Person.*	*2d Person.*	*3d Person.*
1.	amāv	-ĕrĭm, *I may have (loved),*	-ĕrĭs, *thou mayst have—*	-ĕrĭt, *he may have—*
2.	mōnu	-ĕrĭm, *(advised),*	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt,
3.	rex	-ĕrĭm, *(ruled),*	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt,
4.	audīv	-ĕrĭm, *(heard),*	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt.

PLURAL.

1.	amāv	-ĕrĭmŭs, *we may have—*	-ĕrĭtĭs, *ye* or *you may have—*	-ĕrint, *they may have—*
2.	monu	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint,
3.	rex	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint,
4.	audīv	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint.

Pluperfect Tense.

Example. — Monu-issĕm, *I might, could,* etc., *have advised.*

SINGULAR.

1.	amāv	-issĕm, *I might have (loved),*	-issēs, *thou mightst have—*	-issĕt, *he might have—*
2.	monu	-issĕm, *(advised),*	-issēs,	-issĕt,
3.	rex	-issĕm, *(ruled),*	-issēs,	-issĕt
4.	audīv	-issĕm, *(heard),*	-issēs,	-issĕt.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

§ 4. Supine System. Passive Voice.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Perfect Tense.

Example. — Rect-ūs est, *he may* or *can have been ruled.*

SINGULAR.

Cj.	*Stem.*	*1st Person.*	*2d Person.*	*3d Person.*
1.	amāt -ūs sĭm,	*I may have been (loved),*	sīs, *thou mayst have been* —	sĭt, *he may have been* —
2.	monĭt -ūs sĭm,	(*advised*),	sīs,	sĭt,
3.	rect -ūs sĭm,	(*ruled*),	sīs,	sĭt,
4.	audīt -ūs sĭm,	(*heard*),	sīs,	sĭt,

PLURAL.

1.	amāt -ī sīmŭs,	*we may have been* —	sītĭs, *ye* or *you may have been* —	sint, *they may have been* —
2.	monĭt -ī sīmŭs,		sītĭs,	sint,
3.	rect -ī sīmŭs,		sītĭs,	sint,
4.	audīt -ī sīmŭs,		sītĭs,	sint,

Pluperfect Tense.

Example. — Monĭt-ūs essem, *I might, could,* etc., *have been advised.*

SINGULAR.

1.	amāt -ūs essĕm,	*I might have been (loved),*	essēs, *thou mightst,* etc. —	essĕt, *he might* etc. —
2.	monĭt -ūs essĕm,	(*advised*),	essēs,	essĕt,
3.	rect -ūs essĕm,	(*ruled*),	essēs,	essĕt,
4.	audīt -ūs essĕm,	(*heard*),	essēs,	essĕt,

B. TABLE OF

§ 3. Perfect System. Active Voice.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Pluperfect Tense — continued

PLURAL.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	amāv-	issēmŭs, *we might have* —	-issētĭs, *ye* or *you*, etc.—	-issent, *they might*, etc. —
2.	monu	-issēmŭs,	-issētĭs,	-issent,
3.	rex	-issēmŭs,	-issētĭs,	-issent,
4.	audīv	-issēmŭs,	-issētĭs,	-issent,

INFINITIVE MODE.

Perfect Tense.

1. amāv -issĕ, *to have* (*loved*).
2. monu -issĕ, (*advised*).
3. rex -issĕ, *to have* (*ruled*).
4. audīv -issĕ, (*heard*).

---

§ 4. Supine System. Active Voice.

INFINITIVE MODE.

Future Tense.

1. amāt -ūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to* (*love*).
2. monĭt -ūrŭs essĕ, (*advise*).
3. rect -ūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to* (*rule*).
4. audīt -ūrŭs essĕ, (*hear*).

PARTICIPLE.

Future.

1. amāt -ūrŭs essĕ, *about to* (*love*).
2. monĭt -ūrŭs essĕ, (*advise*).
3. rect -ūrŭs essĕ, *about to* (*rule*).
4. audīt -ūrŭs essĕ, (*hear*).

SUPINES.

1. amāt -ŭm, *to* (*love*), -ū, *to be* (*loved*), *in loving*.
2. monĭt -ŭm, (*advise*), -ū, (*advised*),
3. rect -ŭm, (*rule*), -ū, (*ruled*),
4. audīt -ŭm, (*hear*), -ū, (*heard*).

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

§ 4. Supine System. Passive Voice.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Pluperfect Tense — continued.

PLURAL.

Cj.	*Stem.*	*1st Person.*	*2d Person.*	*3d Person.*
1.	amāt -ī essēmŭs, *we might have been*, etc. —	essētĭs, *ye* or *you might*, etc. —	essent, *they might*, etc. —
2.	monĭt -ī essēmŭs,	essētĭs,	essent,
3.	rect -ī essēmŭs,	essētĭs,	essent,
4.	audīt -ī essēmŭs,	essētĭs,	essent,

INFINITIVE MODE.

Perfect Tense.

1. amāt -ŭs essĕ, *to have been* (*loved*).
2. monĭt -ŭs essĕ, (*advised*).
3. rect -ŭs essĕ, *to have been* (*ruled*).
4. audīt -ŭs essĕ, (*heard*).

Future Tense.

1. amāt -ŭm īrī, *to be about to be* (*loved*).
2. monĭt -ŭm īrī, (*advised*).
3. rect -ŭm īrī, *to be about to be* (*ruled*).
4. audīt -ŭm īrī, (*heard*).

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect.

1. amāt -ŭs, *loved.*
2. monĭt -ŭs, *advised.*
3. rect -ŭs, *ruled.*
4. audīt -ŭs, *heard.*

[Note. — Participles in *us* are declined like adjectives of Dec. I. and II. Participles in *ens* are declined like adjectives of Dec. III.]

TABLE II.

INFLECTIONS OF VERBS ON THE STEM SYSTEM.

A.

§ 1. I. THE Latin Verb consists of two parts, the *stem* or *root*, and the *ending*.

Verbs are divided into four classes, called *conjugations*, according to the *characteristic* or last letter of the *verb stem*.

The *Verb Stem* may be found by rejecting the ending *re* of the present infinitive active. This is also called the *First* or *Present Stem;* from it are formed directly the *present, imperfect,* and *future* tenses; taken together they form the *Present System.*

From the *Perfect Stem,* or *Second Stem,* a modification of the Verb Stem, are formed the *perfect tenses active;* they constitute the *Perfect System.*

From the *Supine Stem,* or *Third Stem,* also a modification of the Verb Stem, are formed the *perfect tenses passive;* they constitute the *Supine System.*

II. Verb Stems ending in *a* constitute Conjugation I.

Verb Stems ending in *e* constitute Conjugation II.

Verb Stems ending in *a consonant* or *u* constitute Conj. III.

Verb Stems ending in *i* constitute Conjugation IV.

In Conjugations I., II., and IV., the ending *re* of the present infinitive active is attached directly to the stem.

In Conjugation III. the ending *re* is always attached by means of a connecting vowel *ĕ*.

All verbs which do not belong to one of these four conjugations are termed *Irregular Verbs.*

III. (*a.*) PRESENT SYSTEM.

The Present System, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, includes, —

1. The *Pres.*, *Imperfect,* and *Fut. Ind.* — *Act.* and *Pass.*
2. The *Pres.* and *Imperfect Subj.* — *Act.* and *Pass.*

3. The *Imperative* — *Active* and *Passive.*
4. The *Present Infinitive* — *Active* and *Passive.*
5. The *Present Active,* and *Future Passive Participle.*
6. The *Gerund.*

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem.*

(*b.*) PERFECT SYSTEM.

The Perfect System, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, includes in the Active Voice, —

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect,* and *Future Perfect Indicative.*
2. The *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Subjunctive.*
3. The *Perfect Infinitive.*

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem.*

(*c.*) SUPINE SYSTEM.

The Supine System, with the Supine as its basis, includes, —

1. The *Supines* in *um* and *u*, the former of which with *iri* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive.*

2. The *Future Active* and *Perfect Passive Participles,* the former of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive;* and the latter of which with its auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active are of the Perfect System.

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem.*

IV. REMARKS ON THE TABLE OF INFLECTIONS.

1. *A* characteristic before *o* in the ending is contracted; thus *amao* becomes *amo; amaor, amor.*

2. When the stem ends in *a, e,* or *i,* the stem vowel is made long before any ending consisting of a whole syllable and beginning with a consonant; also before the single consonant *s;* thus *ama-tis, amātis, ama-s, amās, mone-bas, monēbās, audi-mus, audīmŭs,* etc.

3. In the present subjunctive of the first conjugation *a* characteristic becomes *e.*

4. The participles and forms from them take in addition to the verbal increment the regular adjective stems, formed like those of nouns. From these adjective stems the several cases and numbers are produced.

B. TABLE OF

§ 2. Present System. Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Example. — Amo, *I am loving* or *I love;* Regĭmus, *we are ruling, we rule.*

SINGULAR NUMBER.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	ama	-ō,[1] *I am (loving),*	-s, *thou art* —	-t, *he is* —
2.	mone	-ō, *(advising),*	-s,	-t,
3.	reg	-ō, *(ruling),*	-ĭs,	-ĭt,
4.	audi	-ō, *(hearing),*	-s,	-t.

PLURAL.

1.	ama	-mŭs, *we are* —	-tĭs, *ye* or *you are* —	-nt, *they are* —
2.	mone	-mŭs,	-tĭs,	-nt,
3.	reg	-ĭmŭs,	-ĭtĭs,	-unt,
4.	audi	-mŭs,	-tĭs,	-unt.

Imperfect Tense.

Example. — Monēbas, *thou wast advising* or *thou advisedst.*

SINGULAR.

1.	ama	-bām, *I was (loving),*	-bās, *thou wast* —	-bāt, *he was* —
2.	mone	-bām, *(advising),*	-bās,	-bāt,
3.	reg	-ēbām, *(ruling),*	-ēbās,	-ēbāt,
4.	audi	-ēbām, *(hearing),*	-ēbās,	-ēbāt.

PLURAL.

1.	ama	-bāmŭs, *we were* —	-bātĭs, *ye* or *you were* —	-bant, *they were* —
2.	mone	-bāmŭs,	-bātĭs,	-bant,
3.	reg	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant,
4.	audi	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.

Future Tense.

Example. — Reget, *he will rule;* monēbit, *he will advise.*

SINGULAR.

1.	ama	-bō, *I will (love),*	-bĭs, *thou wilt* —	-bĭt, *he will* —
2.	mone	-bō, *(advise),*	-bĭs,	-bĭt,
3.	reg	-ăm, *(rule),*	-ēs,	-ĕt,
4.	audi	-ăm, *(hear),*	-ēs,	-ĕt.

[1] *Ama-o* becomes *amō.*

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

§ 2. Present System. Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Present Tense.

Example. — Amor, *I am loved;* Regĭmur, *we are loved.*

SINGULAR NUMBER.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	ama	-ŏr,[1] *I am (loved),*	-rĭs *or* rĕ, *thou art* —	-tŭr, *he is* —
2.	mone	-ŏr, *(advised),*	-rĭs *or* rĕ,	-tŭr,
3.	reg	-ŏr, *(ruled),*	-ĕrĭs *or* ĕrĕ,	-ĭtŭr,
4.	audi	-ŏr, *(heard),*	-rĭs *or* rĕ,	-tŭr.

PLURAL.

1.	ama	-mŭr, *we are* —	-mĭnĭ, *ye* or *you are* —	-ntŭr, *they are* —
2.	mone	-mŭr,	-mĭnī,	-ntŭr,
3.	reg	-ĭmŭr,	-ĭmĭnī,	-untŭr,
4.	audi	-mŭr,	-mĭnī,	-untŭr.

Imperfect Tense.

Example. — Monebāris, *thou wast advised.*

SINGULAR.

1.	ama	-bār, *I was (loved),*	-bārĭs *or* bārĕ, *thou wast* —	-bātŭr, *he was* —
2.	mone	-bār, *(advised),*	-bārĭs *or* bārĕ,	-bātŭr,
3.	reg	-ēbār, *(ruled),*	-ēbārĭs *or* ēbārĕ,	-ēbātŭr,
4.	audi	-ēbār, *(heard),*	-ēbārĭs *or* ēbārĕ,	-ēbātŭr.

PLURAL.

1.	ama	-bāmŭr, *we were* —	-bāmĭnī, *ye* or *you were* —	-bantŭr, *they*
2.	mone	-bāmŭr,	-bāmĭnī,	-bantŭr, [*were* —
3.	reg	-ēbāmŭr,	-ēbāmĭnī,	-ēbantŭr,
4.	audi	-ēbāmŭr,	-ēbāmĭnī,	-ēbantŭr.

Future Tense.

Example. — Regētur, *he shall* or *will be ruled;* monebĭtur, *he will be advised.*

SINGULAR.

1.	ama	-bŏr, *I will be (loved),*	-bĕrĭs *or* bĕrĕ, *thou wilt be* —	-bĭtŭr, *he will*
2.	mone	-bŏr, *(advised),*	-bĕrĭs *or* bĕrĕ,	-bĭtŭr, [*be* —
3.	reg	-ăr, *(ruled),*	-ērĭs *or* ērĕ,	-ētŭr,
4.	audi	-ăr, *(heard),*	-ērĭs *or* ērĕ,	-ētŭr.

[1] *Ama-or* becomes *amŏr.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

Future Tense — continued.

		PLURAL.		
Cj.	*Stem.*	*1st Person.*	*2d Person.*	*3d Person.*
1.	ama	-bĭmŭs, *we will* —	-bĭtĭs, *ye* or *you will* —	-bunt, *they will* —
2.	mone	-bĭmŭs,	-bĭtĭs,	-bunt,
3.	reg	-ēmŭs,	-ētis,	-ent,
4.	audi	-ēmŭs,	-ētis,	-ent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Active Person-endings.

				SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Conj.	*Verb Stem.*	*Tense Stem.*	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
[*I may love.*] PRESENT.	1.	ama-	ame-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt,
	2.	mone-	monea-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt,
	4.	audi-	audia-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt,
	3.	reg-	rega-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt.
[*I might love.*] IMPERFECT.	1.	ama-	amāre-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt,
	2.	mone-	monēre-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt,
	4.	audi-	audīre-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt,
	3.	reg-	regĕre-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Active Person-endings.

			SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Conj.	*Verb Stem.*	2.	3.	2.	3.
PRESENT.	1.	ama-	—[1] (*love thou*),		-te (*love ye*),	
	2.	mone-	—,[1]		-te,	
	4.	audi-	—,[1]		-te,	
	3.	reg-	e,		-ĭte.	
FUTURE.	1.	ama	-to (*thou shalt*),	-to (*he*),	-tōte (*ye shall*),	-nto (*they*),
	2.	mone	-to,	-to,	-tōte,	-nto,
	4.	audi	-to,	-to,	-tōte,	-unto,
	3.	reg	-ĭto,	-ĭto,	-itōte,	-unto.

[1] The dash (—) means that the stem vowel is made long.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Future Tense — continued.

PLURAL.

Cj.	Stem.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
1.	ama	-bĭmŭr, *we will be* —	-bĭmĭnī, *ye* or *you will be* —	-buntŭr, *they will be* —
2.	mone	-bĭmŭr,	-bĭmĭnī,	-buntŭr,
3.	reg	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnī,	-entŭr,
4.	audi	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnī,	-entŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Passive Person-endings.

	SINGULAR. 1.	2.	3.	PLURAL. 1.	2.	3.
[*I may be loved, etc.*] PRESENT.	-r,	-ris *or* -re,	-tur,	-mur,	-mĭni,	-ntur,
	-r,	-ris *or* -re,	-tur,	-mur,	-mĭni,	-ntur,
	-r,	-ris *or* -re,	-tur,	-mur,	-mĭni,	-ntur,
	-r,	-ris *or* -re,	-tur,	-mur,	-mĭni,	-ntur.
[*I might be loved, etc.*] IMPERFECT.	-r,	-ris *or* -re,	-tur,	-mur,	-mĭni,	-ntur,
	-r,	-ris *or* -re,	-tur,	-mur,	-mĭni,	-ntur,
	-r,	-ris *or* -re,	-tur,	-mur,	-mĭni,	-ntur,
	-r,	-ris *or* -re,	-tur,	-mur,	-mĭni,	-ntur.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Passive Person-endings.

	SINGULAR. 2.	3.	PLURAL. 2.	3.
PRESENT.	-re (*be thou loved*),		-mĭni (*be ye loved*),	
	-re,		-mĭni,	
	-re,		-mĭni,	
	-ĕre,		-imĭni.	
FUTURE.	-tor (*thou shalt be*),	-tor (*he shall be*),		-ntor (*they shall be*),
	-tor,	-tor,		-ntor,
	-tor,	-tor,		-untor,
	-ĭtor,	-ĭtor,		-untor.

B. TABLE OF

§ 3. Perfect System.

Note. — The perfect tenses of all verbs being alike, a single example will suffice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Active: made from the Second Stem.

	2d Stem.	Tense Stem.	SINGULAR. 1.	2.	3.	PLURAL. 1.	2.	3.
Perfect. [*I have loved*, etc.]	2. amāv-	—	ī,	-istī,	-it,	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Pluperfect. [*I had loved*, etc.]	2. amāv-	amāverā-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt.
Future Perfect. [*I shall have loved*, etc.]	2. amāv-	amāver-	o,	-is,	-it,	-ĭmus,	itis,	-int.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Perfect. [*I may have loved*, etc.]	2. amāv-	amāveri-	m,	-s,[1]	-t,	-mus,[1]	-tis,[1]	-nt.
Pluperfect. [*I might have loved*, etc.]	2. amāv-	amāvisse-	m,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt.

§ 5. INFINITIVE MODE.

	Conjugation.	Stem.	Active.
Present.	1.	1. ama	-re (*to love*),
	2.	1. mone	-re,
	4.	1. audi	-re,
	3.	1. reg	-ĕre.
Perfect.		2. amāv-	isse (*to have loved*).
Future.		3. amāto-	amātūrus esse (*to be about to love*).

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	1.	1. ama	-ns (*loving*),
	2.	1. mone	-ns,
	4.	1. audi	-ens,
	3.	1. reg	-ens.
Perfect.			

Future. Usually made by changing *o* of the third stem to *ūro-*.

[1] These endings do not *always* make the stem-vowel long in this tense.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

§ 4. Supine System.

INDICTAIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE MODES.

Passive: made with the Third Stem.

		SINGULAR. 1.	2.	3.		PLURAL. 1.	2.	3.
Perfect. [*I have been loved*, etc.]	amātus, or amāta, or amātum.	sum,	es,	est.	amātī, or amātae, or amāta.	sumus,	estis,	sunt.
Pluf. [*I had been*, etc.]		eram,	eras,	erat.		erāmus,	erātis,	erant.
Fu. Pf. [*I shall have been*, etc.]		ero,	eris,	erit.		erĭmus,	erĭtis,	erunt.
SUBJ. Per. [*I may have been*, etc.]		sim,	sis,	sit.		sīmus,	sītis,	sint.
Plupf. [*I might have been*, etc.]		essem,	esses,	esset.		essēmus,	essētis,	essent.

§ 5. INFINITIVE MODE.

		Passive.
Present.		-ri (*to be loved*), -ri, -ri, -i.
Perfect.	3. amāto-	amātus esse (*to have been loved*).
Future.		amātum iri (*to be about to be loved*).

Participles.

Perfect. Third stem with ending *s* (*loved*).

Future. First stem with ending *ndo* —.

SUPINES.

ACCUSATIVE. Made by changing the *o* of the third stem to *um* (*to love*).

ABLATIVE. Made by changing the *o* of the third stem to *ū* (*to be loved*).

GERUND.

Stem.		
1.	ama	-ndi (*of loving*).
1.	mone	-ndi,
1.	audi	-endi,
1.	reg	-endi.

§ 6. ANALYSIS OF ENDINGS.

I. The first part of the ending in the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods marks the time and distinguishes the tenses. These tense signs are attached to the stem characteristic, thus forming *Tense Stems*. Affixed to the tense signs and forming the last part of the ending are personal endings, distinguishing voice, person, and number. These are, —

II.

		Active Voice.			*Passive Voice.*	
Sing.	1. (I),	-m,	-ŏ,	-ī,	-r,	-ŏr,
	2. (Thou),	-s,	-stī,		-rĭs,	rĕ,
	3. (He),	-t,			-tŭr.	
Plur.	1. (We),	-mŭs,			-mŭr,	
	2. (Ye),	-tĭs,			-mĭnī,	
	3. (They),	-nt,			-ntŭr.	

(1.) Connecting vowels are found uniting the ending to the stem in Conj. III. and IV., and in the complete tenses of all the conjugations.

III. *Tense Signs.*

Pres. Indic. — Imp. *-ba-* Fut. *-bi, -e-,* Perf. Act. — Plu. Act. *-ra-.*
Fut. Per. Act. *-ri-.*
Pres. Sub. *-a-* Imp. *-re-* Per. Act. *-ri-,* Plu. Act. *-sse-.*

(1.) The vowel of the tense sign is sometimes dropped or undergoes change in the first person singular and third person plural.

(2.) It is also changed in the second person singular of the future passive.

(3.) The first conjugation drops the tense sign in the present subjunctive, but changes the stem vowel.

TABLE III.

THE RULES OF SYNTAX AS GIVEN IN ANDREWS AND STODDARD'S GRAMMAR.

I. § 204. A NOUN, annexed to another noun, or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case.

II. § 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

III. § 206. Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong.

IV. § 208. *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand.

V. § 209 (*a.*) The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.

VI. § 209 (*b.*) A verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person.

VII. § 210. A noun in the predicate after a verb, neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing.

GENITIVE.

VIII. § 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive.

IX. § 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and ad-

verbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole.

X. § 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*.

XI. § 214. *Sum* and verbs of *valuing* are followed by a genitive denoting *degree of estimation*.

XII. § 215. *Misereor* and *miseresco* and the impersonals *miseret*, *pœnĭtet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget* are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised.

XIII. § 216. *Recordor*, *memĭni*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten.

XIV. § 217. Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive denoting the *crime*.

XV. § 218. Verbs of admonishing, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive of the person or thing respecting which the admonition is given.

XVI. § 219. *Refert* and *interest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote.

XVII. § 220. Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed are sometimes followed by a genitive.

XVIII. § 221. The name of a town *in which* anything is said *to be* or *to be done*, if of the first or second declension and singular number is put in the genitive.

DATIVE.

XIX. § 222. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative to denote the *object* to which the quality is directed.

XX. § 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative to denote the *object to* or *for* which anything is, or is done.

XXI. § 224. Many verbs compounded with these eleven

prepositions — *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, pro, sub,* and *super* — are followed by the dative.

XXII. § 225. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene,* and *male* are followed by the dative.

XXIII. § 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor;* the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

XXIV. § 227. *Sum,* and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which,* the other the *end for which,* anything is, or is done.

XXV. § 228. Some particles are followed by a dative of the object.

ACCUSATIVE.

XXVI. § 229. The object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

XXVII. § 230. Verbs signifying to name or call; to choose, render, or constitute; to esteem or reckon, which in the passive voice have two nominatives, are followed in the active voice by two accusatives, one of the object and the other of the predicate.

XXVIII. § 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *celo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

XXIX. § 232. Some *neuter* verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own.

XXX. § 233. Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

XXXI. § 234. A verb in the passive voice has the same government as in the active except that the accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive.

XXXII. § 235. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

XXXIII. § 236. Nouns denoting duration of time or extent of space, are put, after adjectives and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs in the ablative.

XXXIV. § 237. After verbs expressing or implying motion,

the name of the town *in which the motion ends*, is put in the accusative without a preposition.

XXXV. § 238. The adjectives *propior* and *proxĭmus*, with their adverbs *propius* and *proxĭme*, like their primitive *prope*, are often joined with the accusative.

XXXVI. § 239. The subject of the infinitive mode is put in the accusative.

VOCATIVE.

XXXVII. § 240. The vocative is used either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

ABLATIVE.

XXXVIII. § 241. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

XXXIX. § 242. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, and *super* are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition.

XL. § 243. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, usually take the ablative of the thing needed.

XLI. § 244. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *prædĭtus*, and *fretus*, are followed by the ablative of the object.

XLII. § 245. *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds are followed by the ablative.

XLIII. § 246. Perfect participles denoting *origin* are often followed by the ablative of the *source*, without a preposition.

XLIV. § 247. Nouns denoting the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

XLV. § 248. The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which anything is effected and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or thing.

XLVI. § 249. A noun denoting the means by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs

signifying to *affect* in any way, to *fill, furnish, load, array, equip, endow, adorn, reward, enrich*, and many others.

XLVII. § 250. A noun, adjective, or verb may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken.

XLVIII. § 251. A noun denoting that of which anything is deprived or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

XLIX. § 252. The *price* or *value* of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive.

L. § 253. A noun denoting the *time at* or *within which* anything is said to be or be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition.

LI. § 254. The name of a town *in which* anything is said *to be* or *to be done*, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition.

LII. § 255. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative without a preposition.

LIII. § 256. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made.

LIV. § 257. A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute*, to denote the time, cause, means, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends.

THE INDICATIVE.

LV. § 259. The indicative is used in every proposition in which the thing asserted is represented as a reality.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

LVI. § 260, II. The subjunctive mode is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hy-

pothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty,* and *desire.*

LVII. § 260, Rem. 6. The present subjunctive is often used to express a wish, an exhortation, asseveration, request, command, or permission.

LVIII. § 261, 1. In the *protasis* of conditional clauses with *si* and its compounds, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply the *non-existence* of the action or state supposed, the imperfect, as in English, implying present time. In the *apodosis,* the same tenses of the subjunctive denote what the result would be, or would have been, had the supposition in the *protasis* been a valid one.

LIX. § 261, 2. The present and perfect subjunctive in the *protasis,* imply the *real* or *possible existence* of the action or state proposed.

LX. § 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition takes the subjunctive after *ut, ne, quo, quin,* and *quomĭnus.*

LXI. § 263, 2. *Quamvis,* however; *licet,* although; *tamquam, tamquam si, quasi, ac si, ut si, velut, velut si, velŭti, sicŭti,* and *ceu,* as if; *modo, dum,* and *dummŏdo,* provided,—take the subjunctive.

LXII. § 263, 3. After *antĕquam* and *priusquam,* the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive.

LXIII. § 263, 4. *Dum, donec,* and *quoad,* signifying *until,* are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object.

LXIV. § 263, 5. *Quum* (cum) when it signifies a *relation of time* takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought,* the subjunctive.

LXV. § 264. Relatives require the subjunctive when the clauses connected by them express merely a conception.

LXVI. § 265. Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

LXVII. § 266, 1. When a dependent proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part*, either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive.

LXVIII. § 266, 3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction takes the subjunctive (whatever be the mood of the preceding verb) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to.

THE IMPERATIVE.

LXIX. § 267. The imperative mood is used to express a *command*, *wish*, *advice*, or *exhortation*.

THE INFINITIVE.

LXX. § 269. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* of a verb.

LXXI. § 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *object* of a verb.

LXXII. § 271. The infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after verbs denoting *ability*, *obligation*, *intention*, or *endeavor*; after verbs signifying to *begin*, *continue*, *cease*, *abstain*, *dare*, *fear*, *hesitate*, or *be wont*; and after the passive of verbs of *saying*, *believing*, *reckoning*, etc.

LXXIII. § 272. The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, and the like.

LXXIV. § 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, etc.; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive.

LXXV. § 274. Participles are followed by the same cases and constructions as their verbs.

LXXVI. § 275. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are followed by the same cases as their verbs.

THE SUPINE.

LXXVII. § 276, I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs.

LXXVIII. § 276, II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the *purpose* of the motion.

LXXIX. § 276, III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful*, *agreeable*, *easy*, or *difficult*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *honorable* or *base*, and a few others.

LXXX. § 277. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs.

LXXXI. § 268. Copulative, disjunctive, and other coördinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

TABLE IV.

ANALYSIS OF NOUNS ON THE STEM SYSTEM.

---

§ 1, I. THERE is one general system of inflection of which the five declensions are varieties, produced by uniting the final letter of the stem with one general system of endings.

II. The stems of Latin nouns end in *a*, *o*, *a consonant* or *i*, *u*, *e*.

III. The endings of Latin nouns are, —

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.			
	Mas. & Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. & Fem.*		*Neut.*	
N.	s, ——,	ĕ, m, ——,	ēs,	ī,	ā.	
G.	ĭs, ī,	ĭs, ī,	ŭm,	rŭm.	ŭm,	rŭm.
D.	ī,	ī,	ĭbŭs,	īs,	ĭbŭs,	īs.
A.	ĕm, m,	like nom.,	ēs,		like nom.	
V.	like nom. e,	like nom.,	like nom.		like nom.	
Ab.	ĕ,	ĕ,	ĭbŭs,	īs,	ĭbus,	īs.

IV. Latin nouns whose stem ends in *a*, united with the above endings, form Declension I.

Nouns whose stem ends in *o*, united with the endings, form Declension II.

Nouns whose stem ends in *a consonant* or in *i*, unite to form Declension III.

Nouns whose stem ends in *u*, unite to form Declension IV.

Nouns whose stem ends in *e*, unite to form Declension V.

§ 2, V. The following scheme will illustrate the manner of union: —

	a. I.	o. II.		SINGULAR. consonant or i. III.		u. IV.		e. V.
	Mensa, *table.*	Servus, *slave.*	Bellum, *war.*	Rex, *king.*	Mare, *sea.*	Fructus, *fruit.*	Cornu, *horn.*	Res, *thing.*
N.	*mensa-* mensă	*servo-s* servŭs	*bello-m* bellŭm	*reg-s* rex	*mari-e* mărē	*fructu-s* fructŭs	*cornu* cornū	*re-s* rēs
G.	*mensa-i* mensæ	*servo-i* servī	*bello-i* bellī	*reg-is* regĭs	*mari-is* marĭs	*fructu-is* fructūs	*cornu-is* cornūs	*re-i(s)* rĕī
D.	*mensa-i* mensæ	*servo-i* servō	*bello-i* bellō	*reg-i* regī	*mari-i* marī	*fructu-i* fructuī	*cornu-i* cornū	*re-i* rĕī
A.	*mensa-m* mensăm	*servo-m* servŭm	*bello-m* bellŭm	*reg-em* regĕm	*mari-e* marē	*fructu-(e)m* fructŭm	*cornu-* cornū	*re-(e)m* rĕm
V.	*mensa-* mensă	*servo-e* servĕ	*bello-m* bellŭm	*reg-s* rex	*mari-e* marĕ	*fructu-s* fructŭs	*cornu-* cornū	*re-s* rēs
Ab.	*mensa-e* mensā	*servo-e* servō	*bello-e* bellō	*reg-e* regĕ	*mari-e* marī	*fructu-e* fructū	*cornu-e* cornū	*re-e* rē
				PLURAL.				
N.	*mensa-i* mensæ	*servo-i* servī	*bello-a* bellă	*reg-es* regēs	*mari-a* mariă	*fructu-es* fructūs	*cornu-a* cornuă	*re-es* rēs
G.	*mensa-rum* mensārŭm	*servo-rum* servōrŭm	*bello-rum* bellōrŭm	*reg-um* regŭm	*mari-um* mariŭm	*fructu-um* fructuŭm	*cornu-um* cornuŭm	*re-um* rerŭm
D.	*mensa-is* mensīs	*servo-is* servīs	*bello-is* bellīs	*reg-ibus* regĭbŭs	*mari-ibus* marĭbŭs	*fructu-ibus* fructĭbŭs	*cornu-ibus* cornĭbŭs	*re-ibus* rĕbŭs
A.	mensa-es mensās	*servo-es* servōs	*bello-a* bellă	*reg-es* regēs	*mari-a* mariă	*fructu-es* fructūs	*cornu-a* cornuă	*re-es* rēs
V.	mensa-i mensæ	*servo-i* servī	*bello-a* bellă	*reg-es* regēs	*mari-a* mariă	*fructu-es* fructūs	*cornu-a* cornuă	*re-es* rēs
Ab.	mensa-is mensīs	*servo-is* servīs	*bello-is* bellīs	*reg-ibus* regĭbŭs	*mari-ibus* marĭbŭs	*fructu-ibus* fructĭbŭs	*cornu-ibus* cornĭbŭs	*re-ibus* rĕbus

VI. The last letter of the stem is termed the *characteristic.*

§ 3. First Declension.

1. Nouns of the first declension have for their final letters, —

Pure Latin nouns, -ă, *feminine.*

Nouns from the Greek, -ē, *feminine;* ās and ēs, *masculine.*

2. The stem of nouns of this declension ends in *-a*; they are declined as follows: —

		SINGULAR.		
Case.	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*	*Meaning.*
Nom.	mensa-	——,	mensă,	*a table.*
Gen.	mensa-	i,	mensæ,	*of a table.*
Dat.	mensa-	i,	mensæ,	*for, to a table.*
Acc.	mensa-	m,	mensăm,	*a table.*
Voc.	mensa-	——,	mensă,	*O table.*
Abl.	mensa-	e,	mensā,	*with, from, by a table.*
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	mensa-	i,	mensæ,	*tables.*
Gen.	mensa-	rum,	mensārŭm,	*of tables.*
Dat.	mensa-	is,	mensīs,	*to, for tables.*
Acc.	mensa-	es,	mensās,	*tables.*
Voc.	mensa-	i,	mensæ,	*O tables.*
Abl.	mensa-	is,	mensīs,	*with, from, by tables.*

3. From an examination of this paradigm we can deduce the following rules for the union of the characteristic with the ending: —

I. When the characteristic is immediately followed by a consonant in the ending, they unite without change.

II. The nominative and vocative singular have no ending.

III. *a*, characteristic, before the ending *i*, unites with it to form *æ*.

IV. *a*, characteristic, before the ending *is*, is dropped.

V. *a*, characteristic, before *e* in an ending absorbs it, becoming *ā*.

§ 4. Second Declension.

1. Nouns of the second declension have for their final letters, —

Pure Latin nouns, ĕr, ĭr, ŭs, *masculine;* ŭm, *neuter.*
Nouns from the Greek, os, *masculine;* on, *neuter.*

2. The stem of nouns of this declension ends in *o;* they are declined as follows: —

	Servus, *slave.*				Puer, *boy.*		
	SINGULAR.				SINGULAR.		
Case.	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*
N.	servo-	s,	servŭs (servŏs),	puero-	——,	puĕr.
G.	servo-	i,	sĕrvī,	puero-	i,	puĕrī.
D.	servo-	i,	servō,	puero-	i,	puĕrō.
A.	servo-	m,	servŭm (servŏm),	puero-	m,	puĕrŭm.
V.	servo-	e,	servĕ,	puero-	——,	puĕr.
Ab.	servo-	e,	servō.	puero-	e,	puĕrō.
	PLURAL.				PLURAL.	
N.	servo-	i,	servī,	puero-	i,	puĕrī.
G.	servo-	rum,	servōrŭm,	puero-	rum,	puerōrŭm.
D.	servo-	is,	servīs,	puero-	is,	puĕrīs.
A.	servo-	os,	servōs,	puero-	os,	puerōs.
V.	servo-	i,	servī,	puero-	i,	puĕrī.
Ab.	servo-	is,	servīs,	puero-	is,	puerīs.

	Ager, *field.*				Bellum, *war.*	
	SINGULAR.				SINGULAR.	
Case.	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*
N.	agro-	——,	ăgĕr (ăgr).	bello-	m,	bellŭm.
G.	agro-	i,	ăgrī,	bello-	i,	bellī.
D.	agro-	i,	agrō,	bello-	i,	bellō.
A.	agro-	m,	agrŭm,	bello-	m,	bellŭm.
V.	agro-	——,	agĕr,	bello-	m,	bellŭm.
Ab.	agro-	e,	agrō.	bello-	e,	bellō.

		PLURAL.			PLURAL.	
N.	agro-	i,	ăgrī,	bello-	a,	bellă.
G.	agro-	rum,	agrōrŭm,	bello-	rum,	bellōrŭm.
D.	agro-	is,	agrīs,	bello-	is,	bellīs.
A.	agro-	es	agrōs,	bello-	a,	bellă.
V.	agro-	i,	agrī,	bello-	a,	bellă.
Ab.	agro-	is,	agrīs,	bello-	is,	bellīs.

3. The following rules of this declension are deduced, —

I. Nouns in which the characteristic is preceded by the liquid *r* reject the characteristic and take no ending in the nominative singular; in that case, when a consonant precedes the *r* a vowel *e* is inserted for the sake of the articulation.

II. Instead of the usual vocative like the nominative, nouns assuming *s* in the nominative, reject the characteristic in the vocative singular and assume *e*.

III. Before *s* and *m*, the characteristic becomes softened to *u*.

IV. Before *i*, the characteristic is rejected.

Exc. In the dative singular, the characteristic with *i* forms *ō*.

V. Before *e*, the characteristic unites with that vowel to form *ō*.

Exc. The vocative singular of nouns assuming *s* in the nom.

VI. Before *a*, the characteristic is rejected.

VII. The ending *rum* of the genitive plural is assumed without change. It is probable that *um* was the original ending, and *r* was inserted for the sake of the sound.

§ 5. Third Declension.

1. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x, *in the nominative.*

(*a.*) *Masculine Endings.*

o, or, er, es, *increasing in the genitive.*

(*b.*) *Feminine Endings.*

as, is, ys, x, es, *not increasing,* **s,** *preceded by a consonant.*

(c.) *Neuter Endings.*

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

2. The stem of nouns of this declension end in *a consonant* or in *i*.

(*a*.) Those words which have a consonant for the characteristic, increase in the genitive (*i. e.*, have more syllables than in the nominative), and are termed *Imparisyllables.* (Madvig.)

(*b*.) Those nouns which have *i* for a characteristic do not increase in the genitive, and are termed *Parisyllables.*

A. IMPARISYLLABLES.

These words are divided into three classes: —

I. Masculine or Feminine nouns assuming *s* in the nominative singular.

II. Masculine or Feminine nouns which do not assume *s* in the nominative singular.

III. Neuter nouns.

I. MASCULINE OR FEMININE NOUNS ASSUMING *s*.

These nouns have the stem ending in a MUTE, *c, g; t, d; p, b*; or the LIQUID *m*, or the SPIRANT *v*.

	Dux, *leader, c.*		Rex, *king, m.*		Virtus, *virtue, f.*		Palus, *marsh, f.*	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
N.	duc-s,	dux,	reg-s,	rex,	virtut-s,	virtūs,	palud-s,	palūs,
G.	duc-is,	ducĭs,	reg-is,	regĭs,	virtut-is,	virtūtĭs,	palud-is,	palūdĭs,
D.	duc-i,	ducī,	reg-i,	regī,	virtut-i,	virtūtī,	palud-i,	palūdī,
A.	duc-em,	ducēm,	reg-em,	rēgem,	virtūt-em,	virtūtēm,	palud-em,	palūdēm,
V.	duc-s,	dux,	reg-s,	rex,	virtut-s,	virtūs,	palud-s,	palūs,
Ab.	duc-e,	ducē.	reg-e,	regē.	virtut-e,	virtūtē.	palud-e,	palūdē.
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
N.	duc-es,	duces,	reg-es,	regēs,	virtut-es,	virtūtēs,	palud-es,	palūdēs,
G.	duc-um,	ducŭm,	reg-um,	regŭm,	virtut-um,	virtūtŭm,	palud-um,	palūdŭm,
D	duc-ibus,	ducĭbŭs,	reg-ibus,	regĭbŭs,	virtut-ibus,	virtutĭbŭs,	palud-ibus,	palūdĭbŭs,
A.	duc-es,	ducēs,	re-ges,	regēs,	virtut-es,	virtūtēs,	palud-es,	palūdēs,
V.	duc-es,	ducēs,	reg-es,	regēs,	virtut-es,	virtūtēs,	palud-es,	palūdēs,
Ab.	duc-ibus,	ducĭbŭs,	reg-ĭbŭs,	regĭbŭs,	virtut-ibus,	virtutĭbŭs,	palud-ibus,	paludĭbŭs.

	Stirps, *stem*, *f.* (rarely *m*).		Urbs, *city*, *f.*		Nix, *snow*, *f.*		Miles, *soldier*, *m.*	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
N.	stirp- s,	stirps,	urb- s,	urbs,	niv- s,	nix,	milet- s,	milĕs,
G.	stirp- is,	stirpĭs,	urb- is,	urbĭs,	niv- is,	nivĭs,	milet- is,	milĭtĭs,
D.	stirp- i,	stirpī,	urb- i,	urbī,	niv- i,	nivī,	milet- i,	milĭtī,
A.	stirp- em,	stirpĕm,	urb- em,	urbĕm,	niv- em,	nivĕm,	milet- em,	milĭtĕm,
V.	stirp- s,	stirps,	urb- s,	urbs,	niv- s,	nix,	milet- s,	milĕs,
Ab.	stirp- e,	stirpĕ.	urb- e,	urbĕ.	niv- e,	nivĕ.	milet- e,	milĭtĕ.
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
N.	stirp- es,	stirpēs,	urb- es,	urbēs,	niv- es,	nivēs,	milet- es,	milĭtēs,
G.	stirp(i)-um,	stirpĭŭm,	urb(i)-um,	urbĭŭm,			milet- um,	milĭtŭm,
D.	stirp- ibus,	stirpĭbŭs,	urb- ibus,	urbĭbŭs,	niv- ibus,	nivĭbŭs,	milet- ibus,	milĭtĭbŭs,
A.	stirp(i)-es,	stirpēs(ĭs),	urb(i)-es,	urbēs(ĭs),	niv(i)-es,	nivēs(ĭs),	milet- es,	milĭtēs,
V.	stirp- es,	stirpēs,	urb- es,	urbēs,	niv-es,	nivēs,	milet- es,	milĭtēs,
Ab.	stirp- ibus,	stirpĭbŭs.	urb- ibus,	urbĭbŭs.	niv- ibŭs,	nivĭbŭs.	milet- ibus,	milĭtĭbŭs.

It will be noticed, —

1. When *s* is added to *c* or *g*, *x* takes the place of *cs* or *gs*; e. g., *dux*, *rex*; so also *v* with *s* like *gs* becomes *x*; *nix*.

2. *T* and *d* are dropped before *s*; e. g., *virtus*, *palus*.

3. Short *e* in the stem before a single mute becomes *i* in the plural and in the oblique cases, singular.

4. That some words have an addition of *i* to the stem in the genitive and accusative plural. This comes from an older stem ending in *i*.

II. MASCULINE OR FEMININE NOUNS WHICH DO NOT ASSUME *s*.

These nouns have the stem ending in one of the LIQUIDS, *l*, *n*, *r*; or in the SPIRANT, *s*.

	Exsul, *exile*, *m.* & *f.*		Actio, *action*, *f.*		Dolor, *grief*, *m.*	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
N.	exsul- —,	exsŭl,	action- —,	actio,	dolor- —,	dŏlŏr,
G.	exsul- is,	exsŭlĭs,	action- is,	actiōnĭs,	dolor- is,	dolōrĭs,
D.	exsul- i,	exsŭlī, etc.	action- i,	actiōnī, etc.	dolor- i,	dolōri, etc.
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
N.	exsul- es,	exsŭlēs, etc.	action- es,	actiōnēs, etc.	dolor- es,	dolōrēs, etc.

	Flos, *flower*, *m.*	Imago, *image*, *f.*	Pater, *father*, *m.*
	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
N.	flos- —, flōs,	imagon- —, imāgo,	patr- —, pater,
G.	flos- is, flōrĭs,	imagon- is, imagĭnĭs,	patr- is, patrĭs,
D.	flos- i, flōrī, etc.	imagon- i, imagĭnī, etc.	patr- i, patrī, etc.
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
N.	flos- es, flōres, etc.	imagon- es, imagĭnēs, etc.	patr- es, patrēs, etc.

	Arbor, *tree*, *f.*	Pecten, *comb*, *m.*	Caro, *flesh*, *f.*
	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
N.	arbor- —, arbŏr,	pecten- —, pectĕn,	caron- —, caro,
G.	arbor- is, arbŏrĭs,	pecten- is, pectĭnĭs,	caron- is, carnĭs,
D.	arbor- i, arbŏrī, etc.	pecten- i, pectĭnī, etc.	caron- i, carni, etc.
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
N.	arbor- es, arbŏrēs, etc.	pecten- es, pectĭnēs, etc.	caron- es, carnēs, etc.

It will be observed, —

1. When stems whose characteristic is *n* have before it *o*, the characteristic is dropped in the nominative, and *o* sometimes shortened; e. g., *actio*. In *caro*, *o* is cut out in the plural and oblique cases singular.

2. Stems ending in *or* have short *o* in the nominative; *arbŏr*.

3. Stems ending in *tr* insert *e* before *r* in the nominative; *pater*.

4. Stems ending in *s* in the plural and oblique cases singular change *s* to *r*; *flos*.

5. Short *e* in the stem before a single mute becomes *i* in plural and oblique cases singular; *pecten*.

6. Stems in *o* increasing short, change *o* to *i* in plural and oblique cases singular; *imāgo*.

III. NEUTER NOUNS.

These assume no ending whatever for the nominative singular.

	Fulgur, *lightning*, *n.*		Nomen, *name*, *n.*		Opus, *work*, *n.*	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
N.	fulgur- —,	fulgŭr,	nomen- —,	nomĕn,	opes- —,	opŭs,
G.	fulgur- is,	fulgŭrĭs,	nomen- is,	nomĭnĭs,	opes- is,	opĕrĭs,
D.	fulgur- i,	fulgŭrī,	nomen- i,	nomĭnī,	opes- i,	opĕrī,
A.	fulgur- —,	fulgŭr,	nomen- —,	nomĕn,	opes- —,	opŭs,
V.	fulgur- —,	fulgŭr,	nomen- —,	nomĕn,	opes- —,	opŭs,
Ab.	fulgur- e,	fulgŭrĕ.	nomen, e,	nomĭnĕ.	opes- e,	opĕrĕ,

	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
N.	fulgur- a,	fulgŭrā,	nomen- a,	nomĭnā,	opes- a,	opĕra,
G.	fulgur- um,	fulgŭrŭm,	nomen- um,	nomĭnŭm,	opes- um,	opĕrŭm,
D.	fulgur- ibus,	fulgŭrĭbŭs,	nomen- ibus,	nominĭbŭs,	opes- ibus,	operĭbŭs,
A.	fulgur- a,	fulgŭrā,	nomen- a,	nomĭnā,	opes- a,	opĕrā,
V.	fulgur- a,	fulgŭrā,	nomen- a,	nomĭnā,	opes- a,	opĕrā,
Ab.	fulgur- ibus,	fulgŭrĭbŭs.	nomen- ibus,	nominĭbŭs.	opes- ibus,	operĭbŭs.

	Tempus, *time*, *n.*		Caput, *head*, *n.*		Femur, *thigh*, *n.*	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
N.	tempos- —,	tempŭs,	caput- —,	capŭt,	femor- —,	femŭr,
G.	tempos- is,	tempŏrĭs,	caput- is,	capĭtĭs,	femor- is,	femŏrĭs,
D.	tempos- i,	tempŏrī,	caput- i,	capĭtī,	femor- i,	femŏrī,
A.	tempos- —,	tempŭs, etc.	caput- —,	capŭt, etc.	femor- —,	femŭr.
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
N.	tempos- a,	tempŏrā, etc.	caput- a,	capĭtā, etc.	femor- a,	femŏrā, etc.

It will be observed, —

1. In case of a single mute characteristic preceded by *e*, the *ĕ* is changed to *ĭ* in the plural and in the oblique cases singular, e. g., *nomen ;* so also *u* sometimes becomes *i ; caput.*

2. The stem characteristic *e* and *o* are sometimes changed into the duller sound *u* in the nominative singular ; *opus*, *tempus*, *femur.*

3. Stems ending in *s* change the *s* to *r* in the plural and in the oblique cases singular ; *tempus*, *opus.*

B. PARISYLLABLES.

These words are divided into two classes : —

I. Masculines and Feminines.

II. Neuters.

I. MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

These nouns have their nominative singular usually in *is* or *ēs.*

	Auris, *ear*, *f.*		Nubes, *cloud*, *f.*		Turris, *tower*, *f.*		Linter, *wherry*, *f.*	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
N.	auri-s,	auris,	nubi-s,	nubēs,	turri-s,	turris,	lintri-—,	lintĕr,
G.	auri-is,	auris,	nubi-is,	nubis,	turri-is,	turris,	lintri-is,	lintris,
D.	auri-i,	aurī,	nubi-i,	nubī,	turri-i,	turrī,	lintri-i,	lintrī,
A.	auri-em,	aurĕm,	nubi-em,	nubĕm,	turri-m,	turrĭm(ĕm),	lintri-em,	lintrĕm,
V.	auri-s,	auris,	nubi-s,	nubis,	turri-s,	turris,	lintri-—,	lintĕr,
Ab.	auri-e,	aurē.	nubi-e,	nubē.	turri-e,	turrī(ē).	lintri-e,	lintrē.
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
N.	auri-es,	aurēs,	nubi-es,	nubēs,	turri-es,	turrēs,	lintri-es,	lintrēs,
G.	auri-um,	auriŭm,	nubi-um,	nubiŭm,	turri-um,	turriŭm,	lintri-um,	lintriŭm,
D.	auri-ibus,	aurĭbŭs,	nubi-ibus,	nubĭbŭs,	turri-ibus,	turrĭbŭs,	lintri-ibus,	lintrĭbŭs,
A.	auri-es,	aurēs(īs),	nubi-es,	nubēs(īs),	turri-es,	turrēs(īs),	lintri-es,	lintrēs(īs)
V.	auri-es,	aurēs,	nubi-es,	nubēs,	turri-es,	turrēs,	lintri-es,	lintrēs,
Ab.	auri-ibus,	aurĭbŭs.	nubi-ibus,	nubĭbŭs.	turri-ibus,	turrĭbŭs.	lintri-ibus,	lintrĭbŭs.

It will be observed, —

1. The characteristic *i* coming before *i* in the ending unites with it by contraction or absorption to form *i*; *auris*.

2. The characteristic *i* coming before *e* in the ending unites with it to form *e*; *aures*, except that in the accusative plural a form in *ī* sometimes occurs.

3. Some nouns change the characteristic *i* to *ē* in the nominative singular; *nubes*.

4. The characteristic *i*, when *r* precedes, is dropped in the nominative singular, and an *e* inserted for the sake of the pronunciation.

II. NEUTERS.

These all end in *e* in the nominative, though this *e* has in some cases been lost.

	Mare, *sea*, *n.*			Animal, *animal*, *n.*		
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
N.	mari-	e,	marĕ,	animali-	e,	anĭmăl,
G.	mari-	is,	maris,	animali-	is,	animālis,
D.	mari-	i,	marī,	animali-	i,	anĭmālī,
A.	mari-	e,	marĕ,	animali-	e,	anĭmal,
V.	mari-	e,	marĕ,	animali-	e,	anĭmal,
Ab.	mari-	e,	marī(ĕ).	animali-	e,	animālī.

		PLURAL.			PLURAL.
N.	mari- a,	marĭă,	animali- a,	animalĭă,
G.	mari- um,	marĭŭm,	animali- um,	animalĭŭm,
D.	mari- ibus,	marĭbŭs, etc.	animali- ibus,	animalĭbŭs, etc.

It will be observed, —

1. *I* characteristic before *i* unites with it to form *i*.

2. *I* characteristic before *e* unites with it to form *e*, except in the ablative singular.

3. *I* characteristic is sometimes dropped in the nominative singular when the ending has become lost.

From the foregoing tables are deduced the following —

RULES FOR THE FORMATION OF CASES IN DEC. III.

A. IMPARISYLLABLES.

I. *S* annexed to *c* or *g* or *v* characteristic unites with it to form *x*.

II. Characteristic *t* or *d* before *s* is dropped.

III. *N* characteristic preceded by *o* is dropped in the nominative singular and the *o* sometimes shortened.

IV. Stems ending in *or* have short *o* in the nominative singular.

V. Stems ending in *tr* insert *e* before *r* in the nominative singular.

VI. Stems ending in *s* change the *s* to *r* between two vowels.

VII. When the characteristic is preceded by a short *o*, *e*, or *u*, these vowels are often changed into *i* in the plural and in the oblique cases singular.

VIII. When the characteristic is preceded by *o* or *e* these vowels sometimes are changed to *u* in the direct cases singular.

IX. The stem is sometimes strengthened by the addition of *i* in the genitive plural, from an older stem of the word. This occurs chiefly, —

1. In most nouns of more than one syllable ending in the nominative singular in *ns* or *rs*.

2. In many nouns in *as* and *is* (plural *ātes* and *ītes*).

3. In *caro*, flesh.

4. In monosyllables in *s* or *x* if the stem syllable be long in quantity. Also in *nix*, *mas*, *strix*.

Exc. *vox*, *rex*, *lex*, *fur*, *laus*, *mos*, *flos*, etc.

REMARK. — Many monosyllables want the genitive plural.

X. Stems ending in two consonants frequently drop one consonant in the direct cases singular.

SPECIAL REMARKS.

1. The following forms occur: N. CĬNĬS, *g. cinĕrĭs* (stem *ciner-*); n. CŬCŬMIS, g. *cucumĕrĭs* or *cucŭmĭs*, ab. *cucŭmī* (stem *cucumer-*); n. PULVIS, g. *pulvĕrĭs* (stem *pulver-*); n. VŌMIS or *vōmĕr*, g. *vomĕrĭs* (stem *vomer-*). So also the adjective PŪBĒS or *pūbĕr*, g. *pubĕrĭs* (stem *puber-*); n. SANGUĬS, g. *sanguĭnĭs* (stem *sanguin-*); n. POLLĬS or *pollĕn*, g. *pollĭnĭs* (stem *pollen-*) n. FĔMŬR, g. *femĭnĭs*; n. JĔCŬR, g. *jecŏrĭs* or *jecĭnŏrĭs*, or *jocĭnŏrĭs*; n. GRŸPS, g. *grŷphĭs*; n. AUCĔPS, g. *aucŭpĭs*; n. VĬBEX, g. *vībĭcĭs*; n. TIGRĬS, g. *tīgrĭs* or *tigrĭdĭs*; n. BŌS, g. BŎVĬS, plu. g. *boŭm*, dat. and abl. *bōbŭs* or *būbŭs*; n. VĬS, g. *vīs*, n. plur. *vīrēs*, g. *virĭŭm*; n. PLĒBS or *plēbēs*.

2. *Sūs* and *grūs* take the endings of *imparisyllables*.

3. The following words have a nominative singular from a different stem from that which gives the other cases: *N.* JŬPĬTER, g. *Jŏvĭs*; n. SĔNEX, g. *sĕnĭs*; n. SŬPELLEX, *supellectĭlĭs*; n. ĬTĔR, g. *itĭnĕrĭs* or *ĭtĕrĭs*.

B. PARISYLLABLES.

XI. *I* characteristic coming before *i* unites with it to form *ī*.

XII. *I* characteristic coming before *e* is rejected.

Exc. In the accusative plural *īs* was used by earlier authors.

Exc. In the ablative singular *ī* often occurs.

XIII. Some nouns change the characteristic *i* to *e* before *s* in the nominative singular.

XIV. The characteristic *i* is sometimes dropped in the nominative singular when no ending is assumed; in that case when *r* precedes, an *e* is inserted before the *r*.

XV. In all other cases the endings are affixed to the stem without change.

§ 6. Fourth Declension.

1. Nouns of the fourth declension have for their final letters,

us, *masculine;* u, *neuter.*

2. The stem of nouns of this declension ends in *u;* they are declined, —

	Fructus, *fruit, m.*			Cornu, *horn, n.*		
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Case.	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*
N.	fructu-	s,	fructŭs,	cornu-	—,	cornū,
G.	fructu-	is,	fructūs,	cornu-	is,	cornūs,
D.	fructu-	i,	fructuī,	cornu-	i,	cornū,
A.	fructu-	m,	fructŭm,	cornu-	—,	cornū,
V.	fructu-	s,	fructŭs,	cornu-	—,	cornū,
Ab.	fructu-	e,	fructū.	cornu-	e,	cornū.
		PLURAL.			PLURAL.	
N.	fructu-	es,	fructūs,	cornu-	a,	cornuă,
G.	fructu-	um,	fructuŭm,	cornu-	um,	cornuŭm,
D.	fructu-	ibus,	fructĭbŭs,	cornu-	ibus,	cornĭbŭs,
A.	fructu-	es,	fructūs,	cornu-	a,	cornuă,
V.	fructu-	es,	fructūs,	cornu-	a,	cornuă,
Ab.	fructu-	ibus,	fructĭbŭs.	cornu-	ibus,	cornĭbŭs.

The following rules are deduced: —

I. *E* in the ending is absorbed by the characteristic, uniting to form *ū*.

II. *I* in the ending is absorbed by the characteristic in the singular number, uniting to form *ū;* in the dative and ablative plural *u* characteristic before *i* usually unites with it to form *i*.

U is formed in *ăcŭs, arcŭs, artŭs, lăcŭs, partŭs, pĕcŭ, quercŭs, spĕcŭs, trĭbŭs, vĕrū;* sometimes in *portŭs, sĭnus, gĕnū,* etc.

III. Neuters (except *sĕcŭs* and *spĕcŭs*) take no ending in the nominative.

IV. In all other cases the endings are annexed without change.

§ 7. Fifth Declension.

1. Nouns of the fifth declension end in

es, *feminine.*

2. The stem of nouns of this declension ends in *e;* they are thus declined: —

Res, *thing, f.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Case.	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*	*Stem.*	*Ending.*	*The Word.*
N.	re-	s,	rēs,	re-	es,	rēs,
G.	re-	i,	rĕī,	re-	rum,	rērŭm,
D.	re-	i,	rĕī,	re-	ibus,	rēbŭs,
A.	re-	m,	rĕm,	re-	es,	rēs,
V.	re-	s,	rēs,	re-	es,	rēs,
Ab.	re-	e,	rē.	re-	ibus,	rēbŭs,

The following rules are deduced: —

I. *E* characteristic before *e* of the ending unites with it to form *ē*.

II. *E* characteristic before *i* of the ending in the plural, absorbs it, forming *ē*.

III. In all other cases the endings are annexed without change.

Rem. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural.

§ 8. Additional Words for Practice.

Acer, -ĕris, *n., maple-tree.*
Arundo, -ĭnis, *f., reed.*
Æs, æris, *n., brass.*
Ætas, -ātis, *f., age.*
Arbĭter, -tri, *m., judge.*
Aries, -ĕtis, *m., ram.*

Ars, -tis, *f.*, *art.*
Canon, -ŏnis, m, *rule.*
Carcer, -ĕris, *m.*, *prison.*
Cardo, -ĭnis, *m.*, *hinge.*
Carmen, -ĭnis, *n.*, *song.*
Causa, -æ, *f.*, *cause.*
Cervix, -ĭcis, *f.*, *neck.*
Codex, -ĭcis, *m.*, *book.*
Comes, -ĭtis, *m. & f.*, *companion.*
Crux, -ūcis, *f.*, *cross.*
Dos, dōtis, *f.*, *dowry.*
Faba, -æ, *f.*, *bean.*
Faber, -bri, *m.*, *artist.*
Fornax, -ăcis, *f.*, *furnace.*
Frater, -tris, *m.*, *brother.*
Fur, -ūris, *m. & f.*, *thief.*
Genus, -ĕris, *n.*, *kind.*
Gluten, -ĭnis, *n.*, *glue.*
Hæres, ēdis, *m. & f.*, *heir.*
Imber, -bris, *m.*, *shower.*
Lac, -tis, *n.*, *milk.*
Lapis, -ĭdis, *m.*, *stone.*
Lepus, -ŏris, *m.*, *hare.*
Lupus, -i, *m.*, *wolf.*
Onus, -ĕris, *n.*, *burden.*
Piper, -ĕris, *n.*, *pepper.*
Quies, -ētis, *f.*, *rest.*
Ritus, -us, *m.*, *ceremony.*
Salar, ăris, *m.*, *trout.*
Sardonyx, onȳchis, *m. & f.*, *sardonyx.*
Series, -ēi, *f.*, *series.*
Serpens, -tis, *m. & f.*, *serpent.*
Uter, utris, *m.*, *bottle.*
Ver, veris, *n.*, *spring.*
Vulnus, -nĕris, *n.*, *wound.*

TABLE V.

FORMS FOR PARSING THE SEVERAL PARTS OF SPEECH.

A. Noun.

— is a { Common / Proper } Noun of the { 1. / 2. / 3. / 4. / 5. } Dec., { Mas. / Fem. / Neut. / Com. } from — —.

(*decline*); stem —, case-ending —; the { Nom. / Gen. / Dat., etc. } { Sing. / Plur. }

{ the subject of —, / direct object of —, / predicate nom. —, / governed by, —, / limiting —, / abl. absolute, — etc. } Rule —.

B. Adjective.

— is an Adjective { in the { Pos. / Comp. / Sup. } degree, from — — (*compare*) } of the / not compared.

{ 1 & 2. / 3. } Dec. [if of 3d of { 1. / 2. / 3. } terminations] (*decline*); stem —, case-end-[ing —;

the { Nom. / Gen., etc. } { Sing. / Plur. } { Mas. / Fem. / Neut. }; { agreeing with —, / used substantively, etc. } Rule —.

C. Pronoun.

— is a { Personal, / Relative, etc., } Pronoun [of { 1. / 2. / 3. } Person] from — — (*decline*);

the { Nom. / Gen., etc. } { Sing. / Plur. } { Mas. / Fem. / Neut. }; { the subject of —, / the direct object of —, / governed by —, / agreeing with —, etc. } Rule—[It refers to — as its { subject, / antecedent, } Rule —.]

D. Verb.

— is a { Regular / Irregular } { Transitive, / Intransitive, / Deponent, etc., } Verb of the { 1. / 2. / 3. / 4. } conjugation,

from — (*conjugate*); is formed from { Pres. / Per. / Sup. } stem, by affixing —,

[compounded of —].

It is found in the { Pres. / Imp. / Fut., etc., } tense, { Ind. / Sub. / Imp., etc., } mode, { Act. / Pass. } voice { [*Syn.*] / [*Infl.*] };

(If finite) the { 1. / 2. / 3. } person, { Sing. / Plur. } agreeing with —. Rule —.

(If infinitive) having —for its subject and { connected with / depending upon } — as its { subject, / object, etc. } Rule—.

(If participle) of the { 1. & 2. / 3. } Dec. [*decline*]; { Nom. / Gen., / etc., } { Sing. / Plur. } { Mas. / Fem. / Neut. } { agreeing with—, / used substantively, etc. } Rule—.

Note.— For "Synopsis," give first person singular of each tense in each mode, through the voice, in which the verb is found. For "Inflection," give the forms for the different persons and numbers in the tense in which the verb may be.

E. Adverb.

— is an Adverb of Time, Place, Manner, etc., } { in the Pos. Comp. Sup. } degree, } [*compare.*] { not compared. }

[Derived from —]. It modifies —, Rule —.

F. Preposition.

— is a Preposition, connecting — to — and marking the relation of —. Rule —.

G. Conjunction.

— is a Coördinate, Subordinate, } Copulative, Final, Causal, etc., } Conjunction, connecting — to —. Rule —.

H. Interjection.

— is an Interjection, expressing —, and independent of grammatical construction.

TABLE VI.

THE ORATIO OBLIQUA OF CÆSAR.

A. Preliminary Definitions.

I. The *Oratio Recta* is language reported in the original words of the speaker or writer. *They said, "We will go."*

II. The *Oratio Obliqua* is language reported in any other form than the original words of the author. *They said that "they would go."*

III. *Principal Tenses* are the *present, present perfect, future,* and *future perfect.*

IV. *Historical Tenses* are the *imperfect, historical perfect,* and *pluperfect.*

B. Oratio Recta.

I. Principal sentences or clauses in the Oratio Recta when —

(*a.*) Declarative, are in the indicative mode.

(*b.*) Imperative, are in the imperative or subjunctive mode.

(*c.*) Interrogative, are in the indicative or subjunctive mode.

(*d.*) Exclamatory, are in the indicative or subjunctive mode.

II. Subordinate sentences or clauses are in the indicative or subjunctive, according to the connection.

III. The tenses of Principal sentences or clauses depend on the time of the action to be expressed.

IV. The tenses of the Subordinate sentences or clauses depend upon the tenses of the Principal.

V. The maker of the address and his associates are represented by the first person; the one to whom the address is made, by the second. The personal pronouns are more frequently employed than in ordinary narration.

C. Oratio Obliqua.

When a speech is changed to the form of the *oratio obliqua* the matter of it becomes dependent upon the verb which introduces the speech, as its object: then, —

I. The Principal Declarative clauses (or sentences) take the accusative with the infinitive, depending upon the verb introducing the speech, as a part of its object.

II. The Principal Interrogative clauses (or sentences) become indirect questions, and hence take the subjunctive, having their tenses determined by that of the introducing verb.

III. The Principal Imperative clauses (or sentences) generally take the subjunctive, their tenses being determined by the introducing verb.

IV. The Subordinate clauses (or sentences) put their verbs in the subjunctive (by the principle of *attraction*), and have their tenses determined by the introducing verb.

V. Pronouns of the first and second persons are changed to the third, or their place is supplied by the nouns they represent.

VI. Pronouns and adverbs referring to nearer objects are changed to those referring to more remote.

D. Remarks.

The following course is recommended to the learner: —

First. Translate the passage in the text.

Second. Change that translation to the English of an *oratio recta*, noticing rules in A.

Third. Change then to the Latin of an *oratio recta*, noticing rules in B.

Fourth. Change to the Latin of the *oratio obliqua*, applying rules and explaining construction.

In the following examples the numerals after the Latin word refer to the explanations following. In the table of references, the first column on the right and left of the words cited refers to the general rules of this Table; then follow general rules from the grammar, and also particular rules and remarks which apply under the general. Thus, according to Harkness's Grammar, *faceret*, page 165, is in the subjunctive, under the general rule for the dependent clauses, which is comprehended under the general rule for the subjunctive by *attraction*; the word is also included under the *special* rule for *conditional* sentences.

Agit, *respondit*, etc., which introduce the *oratio obliqua*, are historical presents, and hence followed by past tenses.

EXAMPLES.

CÆSAR'S COM. BELLO GALL. § XIII.

Oratio Recta.

ENGLISH.

THUS he discourses with Cæsar : —

If the Roman people will make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii will go into that locality, and there remain, where you shall have determined and wished them to be: but if you persist in following them with war, remember both the ancient defeat of the Roman people and the former valor of the Helvetii. Because unexpectedly you attacked one canton, when those who had crossed over the river were not able to bring aid to their comrades; on this account you should not attribute it very especially to your own valor or despise us. We have thus learned from our fathers and ancestors, that we strive rather by bravery than that we fight by stratagem or rely upon ambuscades. Wherefore, cause not that this place, where we have taken our stand, take a name from a disaster to the Roman people and the destruction of their army, or perpetuate the remembrance of it.

Oratio Obliqua.

ENGLISH.

THUS he discoursed with Cæsar : —

If the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii would go into that locality, and there remain, where Cæsar should determine and wish them to be : but if he should persist in following them with war, he should remember both the ancient defeat of the Roman people and the former valor of the Helvetii. Because unexpectedly he had attacked one canton, when those, who had crossed over the river, had not been able to bring aid to their comrades; on this account, he should not attribute it very especially to his own valor, or despise them. That they had thus learned from their fathers and ancestors, that they should strive rather by bravery than that they should fight by stratagem or rely upon ambuscades. Wherefore he should not cause that that place, where they had taken their stand, should take a name from a disaster to the Roman people and the destruction of their army, or perpetuate the remembrance of it.

CÆSAR'S COM. BELLO GALL. § XIII.

Oratio Recta.

LATIN.

Is ita cum Cæsăre agit :—

Si pacem popŭlus Romānus *faciet* (1), in eam partem *ibunt* (2) atque ibi *erunt* (3), ubi *tu* (4) eos *constituĕris* (5) atque esse *voluĕris;* (6) sin bello persĕqui *persevēras* (7), *reminiscĕre* (8) et vetĕris incommŏdi populi Romāni et pristīnæ virtūtis Helvetiōrum. Quòd improvīso unum pagum *adortus es* (9), quum ii, qui flumen *transiĕrant* (10) suis auxilium ferre non *potĕrant* (11), ne ob eam rem aut *tuæ* (12) magnopĕre virtūti *tribuĕris* (13) aut *nos* (14) *despexĕris* (15). *Nos* (16) ita a patrĭbus majoribusque *nostris* (17) *didicĭmus* (18) ut magis virtūte quam dolo *contendāmus* (19) aut insidiis *nitāmur* (20). Quare ne *commisĕris* (21), ut *hic* (22) locus, ubi *constitūmus* (23), ex calamitāte populi Romāni et internecĭōne exercĭtus nomen *capiat* (24) aut memoriam *prodat* (25).

Oratio Obliqua.

LATIN.

Is ita cum Cæsăre agit: —

Si pacem populus Romānus *facĕret* (1) in eam partem *itūros* (esse) (2) atque ibi *futūros* (3), ubi *Cæsar* (4) eos *constituisset* (5) atque esse *voluisset* (6); sin bello persĕqui *perseverāret* (7), *reminiscerĕtur* (8) et vetĕris incommŏdi popŭli Romāni et pristīnæ virtūtis Helvetiōrum. Quòd improvīso unum pagum *adortus esset* (9), quum ii, qui flumen *transissent* (10) suis auxilium ferre non *potuissent* (11), ne ob eam rem aut *suæ* (12) magnopĕre virtūti *tribuĕret* (13) aut *ipsos* (14) *despicĕret* (15); *se* (16) ita a patrĭbus majoribusque *suis* (17) *didicisse* (18) ut magis virtūte quam dolo *contendĕrent* (19) aut insidiis *niterentur* (20). Quare ne *committĕret* (21), ut *is* (22) locus, ubi *constituissent* (23), ex calamitāte popŭli Romāni et internecĭōne exercĭtus nomen *capĕret* (24) aut memoriam *prodĕret* (25).

REFERENCES.

ORATIO RECTA.

	Table VI.	*Harkness.*	*A. & S.*	*Bullions & M.*	*Allen.*
1. faciet.	B. II. IV.	480, 508	258, I. 261, R. 1	1259–1262, 1090	59, III.
2. ibunt.	B. I. (a), III.	474, 470	259, Rem. 2	1090	58, I.; 27, IV.
3. erunt.	B. I. (a), III.	474, 470	259, Rem. 2	1090	58, I.; 27, IV.
4. tu.	B. V.				
5. constituĕris.	B. II., IV.	473	258, I. 259, Rem. 2	1098	58, I.; 27, IV.
6. voluĕris.	B. II., IV.	473	258, I. 259, Rem. 2	1098	58, I.; 27, IV.
7. persevĕras.	B. II., IV.	508, 1	259, (1), (b)	1268, 1084	59, III.
8. reminiscĕre.	B. I. (b), III.	535, 508, 2	267 (1)	1110, 1111	58, III.
9. adortus es.	B. II., IV.	471, I.	259, (2), (a)	1092	70, IV.; 27, III.
10. transilĕrant.	B. II., IV.	472, 518, II. 3	145, V.; 264, 6, R. 4	1096	69, N.
11. potĕrant.	B. II., IV.	468	263, 5, R. 1	1087	62, I.
12. tuæ.	B. V.				
13. tribuĕris.	B. I. (b), III.	488, II. 2, 3	260, R. 6, (c)	1114	58, III.
14. nos.	B. V.				
15. despexĕris.	B. I. (b), III.	488, II. 2, 3	260, R. 6, (c)	1114	58, III.
16. nos.	B. V.				
17. nostris.	B. V.				
18. didicimus.	B. I. (a), III.	471, I.	259, (2), (a)	1092	27, III.
19. contendāmus	B. II., IV.	480, 489	258, I. 1, 262	1164, 1218	57, 65
20. nitāmur.	B. II., IV	480, 489	258, I. 1, 262	1164, 1218	57, 65
21. commisĕris.	B. I. (b), III.	488, II.	260, R 6, (c)	1114	58, III.
22. hic.		450, 1	207, R. 23	1092	20, II.
23. constitīmus.	B. II., IV.	471, I.	259, (2), (a)	240	27, III.
24. capiat.	B. II., IV.	480, 489	258, I. 1, 262	1164, 1218	57, 65
25. prodat.	B. II., IV.	480, 489	258, I. 1, 262	1164, 1218	57, 65

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

	Table VI.	*Harkness.*	*A. & S.*	*Bullions & M.*	*Allen.*
1. facĕret.	C. IV.	529, 527, 3; 480, 481, II. 1, 508	266, 2; 261, 1, R. 2, 258	1296, 1297, 1259, etc.	67, II.; 59, 57
2. itūros.	C. I.	530, I.; 551, I., 543, 481, VI.	266, 2, 1; 270, R. 3; 268, R. 4	1296, 1297, 1152	67, 2, 70
3. futūros.	C. I.	530, I.; 551, I., 543, 481, VI.	266, 2, 1; 270, R. 3; 268, R. 4	1296, 1297, 1152	67, 2, 70
4. Cæsar.	C. V.				
5. constituisset.	C. IV	529, 527, 480	266, 2, 1, R. 4; 258	1296	67, II.; 57
6. voluisset.	C. IV.	529, 527, 480	266, 2, 1, R. 4; 258	1296	67, II.; 57
7. perseverāret.	C. IV.	529, 527, 508, 480, 533	266, 2, 1; 261; 258	1296, 1259, etc.	59, III., IV.; 57
8. reminiscerĕtur.	C. III.	530, II.; 487, 480	266, 2, 1, R. 1, (b); 260, R. 6; 258	1296, 1200	67, II. 1; 68
9. adortus esset.	C. IV.	529, 527, 517, 480	266, 2, 1; 258	1296, 1255	67, II.; 63, 57
10. transissent.	C. IV.	529, 527, 480	266, 2, 1; 258	1296	67, II.; 57
11. potuissent.	C. IV.	529, 527, 518, 480	266, 2, 1; 263, 5; 258	1296, 1244	67, II.; 62, I.; 57
12. suæ.	C. V.	533		1296	
13. tribuĕret.	C. III.	530, II.; 487, 480	266, 2, 1; 260 R. 6; 258	1296, 1200	67, II. 1; 57
14. ipsos.	C. V	533		1296	
15. despicĕret.	C. III.	530, II.; 487, 480	266, 2, 1, 260, R. 6; 258	1296, 1200	67, II. 1; 57
16. se.	C. V.	533		1296	
17. suis.	C. V.	533		1296	
18. didicisse.	C. I.	530, I.; 551, I.; 480, 542	266, 2, 1; 270, R. 2, (b)	1296, 1152	67, 2
19. contendĕrent.	C. IV.	529, 527, 489, 480	266, 2, 1; 262, 258	1296, 1218	67, II.; 65, 57
20. niterentur.	C. IV.	529, 527, 489, 480	266, 2, 1; 262, 258	1296, 1218	67, II.; 65, 57
21. committĕret.	C. III.	530, II.; 487, 480	266, 2, 1; 260, R. 6; 258	1296, 1200	67, II. 1; 57
22. is.	C. VI.	533		1296	
23. constituissent.	C. IV.	529, 527, 480	266, 2, 1; 258	1296	67, II.; 57
24. capĕret.	C. IV.	529, 527, 489, 480	266, 2, 1; 262, 258	1296, 1218	67, II.; 65, 57
25. prodĕret.	C. IV.	529, 527, 489, 480	266, 2, 1; 262, 258	1296, 1218	67, II.; 65, 57

CÆSAR'S COM. § XIV.

Oratio Recta.

ENGLISH.

THUS Cæsar replies to them: —

Less doubt is afforded me on this account, because I hold in mind those things which you have recalled: and I am the more indignant, the less they have happened according to the desert of the Roman people: if they had been conscious to themselves of any act of injury, it would not have been difficult to be on their guard. (1) But they were deceived in this, that they neither knew that anything had been perpetrated by them, on account of which they should fear, nor did they think they ought to be apprehensive without reason. But if I am willing (2) to forget old abuse, can I also lay aside (3) the recollection of recent injuries, that, contrary to my will, you have attempted a journey through the province, that you have harassed the Ædui, the Ambarri, the Allobroges? That you are boasting in so insolent a manner of your victory, and that you are wondering that for so long a time you have inflicted injuries without punishment, tends to the same result. For the immortal gods, in order that men may grieve (4) more thoroughly over the change of affairs, have been accustomed to sometimes grant more prosperous circumstances and a longer freedom from punishment to those upon whom they may wish (5) to take vengeance for their wickedness. Although these things are so, yet if hostages shall be given me from you, in order that I may know (6) that you will do those things which you promise, and if you shall render satisfaction (7) to the Ædui for the wrongs which you have inflicted upon them and their allies, also if you shall satisfy the Allobroges, I will make (8) peace with you.

REFERENCES.

	Table VI.	*Harkness.*	*Andrews & S.*	*Bullions & M.*	*Allen.*
1. fuit.	B. I. (a).	511, I.	261, 1, R. 1 and 2	1272, 1274	59, III.
2. velim.	B. II., IV.	508, 511, II.	261, 2, R. 2	1261	59, IV. 1
3. possim.	B. I. (c).	486, II.	261, 2	1263	59, IV. 1
4. doleant.	B. II.	489	262	1205	64
5. velint.	B. II.	501	264, 6	1227	60, 66
6. intelligam.	B. II.	489	489	1205	64
7. satisfaciētis.	B. II.	508	261, 2, R. 1	1261	59, III.
8. faciam.	B. I. (a).	508	261, 2, R. 1	1261	59, III.

Oratio Obliqua.

LATIN.

His Cæsar ita respondit: —

Eo *sibi* minus dubitatiōnis *dāri*, quod eas res *legāti Helvetii commemorassent* memoriā *tenēret:* atque eo gravius *ferre*, quo minus merĭto populi Romāni *accidissent:* qui si alicūjus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non *fuisse* (1) difficile cavēre: sed eo *deceptum*, quod neque commissum a se *intelligēret*, quare timēret, neque sine causa timendum *putāret*. Quòd si vetĕris contumeliæ oblivisci *vellet* (2), num etiam recentium injuriārum, quod, *eo* invĭto, iter per provinciam per vim *tentassent*, quòd Æduos, quòd Ambarros, quòd Allobrŏges *vexassent*, memoriam deponĕre *posse* (3)? Quòd *suā* victoriā tam insolenter *gloriarentur*, quodque tam diu *se* impūne injurias tulisse *admirarentur*, eodem *pertinēre*. *Consuesse* enim *deos* immortāles, quò gravius homĭnes ex commutatiōne rerum doleant (4), quos pro scelĕre eōrum ulcisci velint (5), his secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem impunitatem concedĕre. Quum *ea* ita sint, tamen si obsĭdes ab *iis sibi dentur*, uti ea quæ *polliceantur* factāros *intelligat* (6), et si Æduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eōrum *intulĕrint*, item si Allobrogĭbus *satisfaciant* (7), *esse* cum *iis* pacem *esse factūrum* (8).

REFERENCES.

	Table VI.	*Harkness.*	*Andrews & S.*	*R. & M.*	*Allen.*
1. fuisse.	C. I.	510, 530, I.	266, 2	1298	67, 2
2. vellet.	C. IV.	529, 506	261, R. 2, 258, I. 2	1298	57
3. posse.	C. II.	530, II. 2	266, 2, (c)	1298	67, 2, II. 2
4. doleant.	C. IV.	529, 489	266, 2; 262	1298	67, II. 64
5. velint.	C. IV.	529, 501	266, 2; 264 6	1298	67, II. 60, 66
6. intelligat.	C. IV.	529, 489	266, 2; 489	1298	67, 64
7. satisfaciant.	C. IV.	529, 506	266, 2; 261	1298	67, II. 57, 59
8. esse factūrum.	C. I.	530, I.	266, 2	1298	67, 2

In the statement of a general truth, *consuesse deos*, etc., primary (or principal) tenses are employed, and thereafter to give a more lively effect to the narrative.

SPECIAL EXERCISES

IN THE ORATIO RECTA AND ORATIO OBLIQUA.

I.

PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

1. Dixit: "Ego veniam." Dixit, se ventūrum esse. Dicebāmus: "Puĕrum monebĭmus." Dicebāmus, nos puĕrum monitūros esse. Respondit: "Ego id feci." Respondit, se id fecisse. Respondit, se id facĕre. Dixērunt: "Nobis est in anĭmo hoc facĕre." Dixērunt, sibi esse in animo id facĕre. Demonstrant: "Nobis præter agri solum nihil est relĭqui." Demonstrant, sibi præter agri solum nihil esse relĭqui. Cæsar ita respondit: "Eò mihi minus dubitatiōnis datur." Cæsar respondit, eò sibi minus dubitatiōnis dari. Rogāvit: "Quid faciam" (fut.)? Rogāvit, quid facĕret. Jussit: "Desilīte, commilitōnes!" Jussit, ut commilitōnes desilīrent. Monet: "Mihi has res dicĭte!" Monet, ut sibi eas res dicant.

II.

PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

You say: "We will come." You say that you will come. You said that you would come. I have said: "I love not wisdom." I have said that I love not wisdom. I said that I loved not wisdom. You replied to the ambassadors: "I have not done this thing." You replied to the ambassadors that you had not done that thing. They say to me: "We are punishing the

soldiers." They said to me: "We are punishing the soldiers." They said to me: "We have punished the soldiers." They tell me (*dat.*) that they are punishing the soldiers. They told me that they were punishing the soldiers. They told me that they had punished the soldiers. I ask him: "Why (*quare*) do you dismiss the council?" I asked him: "Why have you dismissed the council?" I asked him: "Why did you dismiss the council?" I ask him why he dismisses the council. I asked him why he dismissed the council. I asked him why he had dismissed the council. He gave orders: "Burn the villages!" He ordered that they should burn the villages. He orders that they burn the villages.

III.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND RESULT.

Dico: "Ego veniam, ut milĭtes videas." Dico, me ventūrum esse ut ille milĭtes videat. Dixi, me ventūrum esse ut ille milĭtes videretur. Dixi: "Ego veni, ut milĭtes vidēres." Dixi, me venīre ut milĭtes vidēret. Dixi, me venisse ut milĭtes vidēret. Respondit: "Nos hoc fecĭmus ne Germāni Rhenum transeant." Respondet, se hoc facĕre ne Germāni Rhenum transeant. Respondit, se hoc facĕre ne Germāni Rhenum transeant. Respondit, se hoc fecisse ne Germāni Rhenum transīrent. Rogavērunt: "Quid faciēmus ut conāta perficiāmus?" Rogavērunt, quid facĕrent ut conāta perficĕrent. Rogant, quid faciant ut conāta perficiant. Divĭco respondit: "Ita nos a majorĭbus nostris institūti sunt uti obsĭdes accipĕre non dare consueverĭmus." Divĭco respondit: "Ita nos instituĭmur uti obsĭdes accipĕre non dare consuescāmus." Respondet, ita se institui uti obsĭdes accipĕre non dare consuescant. Respondit, ita se institūtos esse uti obsĭdes accipĕre, non dare consuevĕrint. Respondit, ita se institūtos esse uti obsĭdes accipĕre, non dare consuevissent. Dixit: "Non dubito, quin Helvetii plurĭmum possint." Dixit: "Non dubitāvi, quin Helvetii plurĭmum possent." Dixit: "Non dubitāvi, quin Helvetii plurĭmum potuĕrint." Dixit, se

non dubitāre, quin Helvetii plurĭmum possent. Dicit, se non dubitāre, quin Helvetii plurĭmum possint. Dixit, se non dubitavisse quin Helvetii plurĭmum potuissent.

IV.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND RESULT.

"What (*quid*) can I do that Cæsar may rule?" He asked what he could do that Cæsar might rule. He asks what he can do that Cæsar may rule. "We wage war that we may live." They say that they wage war in order that they may live. They said that they had waged war in order that they might live. They say that they will wage war in order that they may live. "A very high mountain overhangs, so that a few can be able to easily check an army." It was announced to the Helvetii that a very high mountain overhung so that a few could check an army. It was announced that a high mountain overhung so that a few had been able to check the army. "He does not doubt that Ariovistus is living." I say, that he does not doubt that Ariovistus is living. I say, that he did not doubt that Ariovistus was living. I said he had entertained no doubt that Ariovistus had lived.

V.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES; TEMPORAL AND CAUSAL.

Dixērunt: "Perfacĭle est, quum virtūte omnĭbus præstēmus, totĭus Galliæ imperio potīri." Dixērunt, perfacĭle esse, quum virtūte omnĭbus præstārent, totĭus Galliæ imperio potīri. Dixit: "Iter altĕrum est facilius, propterea quòd Helvetiōrum inter fines et Allobrŏgum Rhodănus fluit." Dixit, iter altĕrum esse facilius, propterea quòd Helvetiōrum inter fines et Allobrŏgum Rhodănus fluĕret. Dicit, iter altĕrum esse facilius, propterea quòd Helvetiōrum inter fines et Allobrŏgum Rhodănus fluat. "Mihi quum id nuntiātum est, eos per provinciam iter facĕre conāri, maturāvi ab urbe proficisci." Cæsar dixit, maturavisse ab urbe proficisci, quum sibi id nuntiātum esset eos iter

facĕre conāri. "Antĕquam de republĭca dicam, expōnam consilium." Respondit, se expositūrum esse consilium, antĕquam de republĭca dicĕret. Cæsar dixit, Helvetios quòque relĭquos Gallos virtūte præcessisse, quòd fere quotidiānis prœliis cum Germānis contendissent, quum aut suis finĭbus eos prohibĕrent aut ipsi in eōrum finĭbus bellum gerĕrent.

VI.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES; TEMPORAL AND CAUSAL.

"Because I was unwilling that those things should be discussed (*jactāri*), I dismissed the council." He said that he dismissed the council because he was unwilling that those things should be discussed. Dumnorix was a friend to the Helvetians, because he had married (*lead into marriage*) the daughter of Orgetorix. They thought that Dumnorix would be a friend to the Helvetians, because he had married the daughter of Orgetorix. Cæsar says that, inasmuch as (*quum*) they cannot persuade these, they will send ambassadors to Dumnorix, the Æduan. "We persuaded the Allobroges, because they were not friendly disposed (*bono anĭmo*) toward the Roman people." "We persuaded the Allobroges, because they said they were not friendly disposed toward the Roman people." They said that they had persuaded the Allobroges, because they were not friendly disposed toward the Roman people.

VII.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES; CONDITIONAL.

"Si negas, convincam." Dixi, me convictūrum, si negāret, "Si omnia patent, quid facĕre possum?" Rogābat, quid facĕre posset, si omnia patērent. Dixit: "Si omnia patent, exĭbo." Dixit, se exitūrum, si omnia patērent. Dicit, se exitūrum, si omnia pateant. "Si ipse in Italiam contendat, duas legiōnes conscrĭbat." Respondērunt, se duas legiōnes conscriptūrum, si ipse in Italiam contendĕret. "Si ullo modo fiĕri possit, flumen transīre velim." Dixit, se flumen transīre velle, si ullo modo

fiĕri posset. "Hæc si enuntiāta Ariovisto sint, non dubĭto, quin de omnĭbus obsidĭbus gravissĭmum supplicium sumat." Divitiăcus locūtus est, hæc si enuntiāta Ariovisto essent, non dubitāre, quin de omnĭbus obsidĭbus gravissĭmum supplicium sumĕret. "Ego, si hoc optĭmum factu judicavissem, vitæ horam isti non dedissem." Cicĕro dixit se, si hoc optĭmum factu judicavisset, vitæ horam isti non deditūrum fuisse. "Nisi te satis incitātum esse confidĕrem, scribĕrem plura." Confirmāvit, se plura scriptūrum, nisi eum satis incitātum esse confidĕret. "Sin autem servīre meæ gloriæ vis (*volo*), egredĕre." Monet, ut egrederētur, si ille servīre gloriæ suæ vellet. "Si id ita fecĕris, mihi populōque Romāno perpetua amicitia tecum erit." Cæsar respondit, si id ita fecisset, sibi populōque Romāno perpetuam amicitiam tecum futūram. "Si quid ille a me velit, illum ad me venīre oportet." Ariovistus respondit, illum ad se venīre oportēre, si quid ille a se vellet.

VIII.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES; CONDITIONAL.

"If Ariovistus has departed, I will move the camp." "If all Gaul is divided into three parts, the Belgæ inhabit one and the Aquitani another." "If all Gaul be divided into three parts, the Belgæ will inhabit one and the Aquitani another." "If all Gaul were divided into three parts, the Belgæ would inhabit one, the Aquitani another." "If Gaul had been divided into three parts, the Belgæ would have inhabited one." They said that if all Gaul was (then) divided into three parts, the Belgæ inhabited (were inhabiting) one and the Aquitani another. They said that if all Gaul was divided into three parts, the Belgæ would inhabit one and the Aquitani another. They said that if Gaul had been divided into three parts, the Belgæ would have inhabited one. They say that if all Gaul is divided into three parts, the Belgæ will inhabit one. "If you attempt to use force, I will restrain you." He said that if he had at-

tempted to use force, he himself would have restrained him. "We do not doubt that if the Romans conquer the Helvetii, they will take away liberty from the Ædui also." They said they did not doubt that if the Romans conquered the Helvetii, they would take away liberty from the Ædui also.

IX.

Cæsar said: That all Gaul was divided into parts, of which the Belgæ inhabited one, the Aquitani another, and the third those who, in his language, were called Gauls, in their own, Celts; that all these differed from each other in language and in laws; that the bravest of these were the Belgæ, because they were farthest removed from the province, and because they were nearest to the Germans with whom they wage war continually; that for the same reason the Helvetians also excelled the rest of the Gauls in battle; that one part of this territory, which he had said the Gauls held, began from the river Rhone and even reached to the Rhine on the side of the Sequani and Helvetii; that it sloped to the north; that the Belgæ extended to the lower part of the river Rhine; that Aquitania extended to that part of the ocean which lies off Spain, and that it faced the northwest.

ADDITIONAL SENTENCES

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO LATIN, CORRESPONDING TO SECTIONS IN PART I.

XXVII.

1. If the Romans may say. 2. If punishment should fall upon the Romans. 3. I can warn the Helvetii that they avoid the river. 4. What states are (*indic.*) in arms? 5. I will tell you (*dat.*) what states are in arms. 6. I told you what states were in arms. 7. They appoint a time, at which time the Santones may assemble at the bank of the river. 8. Let the Romans give (*pres. sub.*) an opportunity of flight.

XXIX.

1. Call Divitiacus to (*ad*) me. 2. He shall show these things to you. 3. They shall make an end of entreating. 4. Love thou the commander. 5. Ye shall advise that they avoid all grounds of suspicion. 6. Thou shalt hear these things. 7. To flee from the battle. 8. He ordered Divitiacus to come to him. 9. The hope of ruling. 10. Learning from him (*ab eo*) who had fled. 11. The hope of making a journey (*fut. pass. part.*; see note on *sequi*, Latin Sentences).

XXXI.

1. I have appointed a day. 2. They had led across the river. 3. You had returned to him. 4. When (*ubi*) the day shall have come and the soldiers shall have assembled. 5. He may have sent these letters. 6. I have discovered (*cognosco*) what the Romans have done. 7. Because Titus Labienus had seized

(*subj.*) a third part of the German country. 8. The Germans to have settled in his territory. 9. He said that the Germans had settled in his territory, (*acc. with infin.*) 10. Themselves to have led across the river. 11. They said that they had led across the river.

XXXIII.

1. They had been loved by the soldiers. 2. The council might have been dismissed. 3. The fortune of war may have been tried. 4. They said that they would make peace with him. 5. Cæsar had been informed of their arrival. 6. Ariovistus having been sent away, the Ædui, who had come to the conference made announcement to Cæsar.

XXXIV.

1. When Titus Labienus held (*subj.*) the top of the mountain, and the enemy's camp was not distant more than one mile, Cæsar sent forward the soldiers. 2. The Allobroges, who have villages and walled towns across the Rhone, betake themselves in flight (*abl. of manner*) to Cæsar. 3. They sent ambassadors to Dumnorix, the Æduan, that they might obtain this thing. 4. The Helvetii had now transported their forces through the territory of the Sequani, and had come into the territory of the Ædui.

XXXV.

1. I am about to advise that Dumnorix shun war. 2. You were about to order that hostages should be given. 3. If you intend to do this (*subj.*). 4. He thought it ought not to be allowed (*infin.*). 5. He replied that he would take time (*dies*). 6. I will take time. 7. He says that he will prevent them. 8. I will prevent you. 9. Cæsar thought it ought not to be waited by him. 10. This thing is not to be obtained by the Gauls. 11. The Gauls will do the same thing which has been done by the Helvetii.

XXXVI.

1. The camp will be moved and five thousand soldiers will be sent forward to seek the enemy. 2. A few of your men followed Ariovistus and his allies very eagerly. 3. He said that oaths ought to be given. 4. Cæsar demanded the ambassadors, who had been held by Ariovistus.

XXXVII.

1. There is only one way by which (way) I can go out from my native country. 2. When you have learned through whose villages he has gone, you will order that he be led back. 3. The Helvetians will go into that place where you shall have appointed and wished them to be. 4. If you will render satisfaction to the Ædui for the injuries which you have brought upon them. 5. Liscus was indicated. 6. Cæsar thought that Liscus was indicated.

XXXVIII.

1. I hate Cæsar and the Romans. 2. He replied that he hated both Cæsar and the Ædui. 3. Our men were annoyed by the enemy, who followed eagerly the rear. 4. It was necessary to begin the battle. 5. It is my intention to make peace. 6. He said that it was your intention to ask aid.

VOCABULARY.

A.

A., an abbreviation of the *prænomen Aulus*. **A. d.** stand for *ante diem*.

A, Ab, Abs, *prep. with abl.*, from, after, by, on, at, on the side of.

Abdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *a.* (*ab & do*), to put away; to hide, conceal.

Abdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*ab & duco*), to carry, lead off *or* away.

Abeo, īre, īvi, or ii, *irr. n.* (*ab. & eo*), to go away, depart.

Abjĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, *a.* (*ab & jacio*), to throw away; to cast.

Abs. See *A.*

Absens, tis, *adj.* (*abs & ens*), absent, remote.

Abstĭneo, ēre, ui, tentum, *a.* (*abs & teneo*), to keep off; to restrain one's self from; to abstain, refrain from.

Absum, abesse, abfui, or **afui**, *irr. n.* (*ab & sum*), to be absent; to be distant, *or* remote; to keep aloof; to fail, be wanting.

Ac, *conj.* the same as *atque*; and, and indeed. *Idem ac* or *atque*, the same as.

Accēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, *n.* (*ad & cedo*), to draw near to, approach; to be added to.

Acceptus, a, um, *adj.* (*accipio*), accepted, acceptable.

Accĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, s. (*ad & cado*), to fall down at *or* before; to happen, occur, befall. **Accidit**, *imp.* it happens.

Accĭpio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, *a.* (*ad & capio*), to take, accept; to receive, obtain, acquire.

Accurro, ĕre, curri and cucurri, cursum, *n.* (*ad & curro*), to run to, hasten to.

Accūso, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*ad & causa*), to blame; to complain of, accuse.

Acer, *adj.*, sharp, severe, brave.

Acerrĭme. See *Acriter*.

Acies, ēi, *f.*, a sharp edge *or* point; a line *or* column of soldiers; an army. *In acie*, in battle array.

Acquīro, ĕre, quisīvi, quisītum, *a.* (*ad & quæro*), to gain; to acquire, get, procure.

Acrĭter, acrius, acerrĭme, *adv.* (*acer*, sharp), vehemently, keenly, sharply, valiantly.

Acūtus, a, um, *adj.* (*acuo*, to sharpen), pointed, sharp.

Ad, *prep. with the acc.*, to, unto, on at, near, toward; in regard to, according to. *With numerals, it signifies*, about, to the number of.

Addūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*ad. & duco*), to lead to; to conduct, persuade, induce.

Adequĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.* (*ad & equito*, to ride on horseback), to ride up to *or* near to.

Adhĭbeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a.* (*ad & habeo*), to turn *or* direct towards; to receive, call in; to bring on, invite.

Adhuc, *adv.* (*ad & huc*), hitherto, thus far, as yet.

Aditus, us, *m.* (*adeo*), a going to, approach, entrance.

Admīror, āri, ātus, sum, *dep.* (*ad & miror*), to wonder, wonder at; to admire.

Admitto, ĕre, isi, issum, *a.* (*ad & mitto*), to send to *or* onward; to push forward; to admit, introduce.

Admŏneo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a.* (*ad & moneo*), to remind, put in mind, warn.

Adolescens, tis, *adj. & subs. m. and f.* (*adolesco*), young; a youth, a young man *or* woman.

Adolescentia, æ, *f.* (*adolescens*), youth.

Adŏrior, īri, ortus sum, *dep.* (*ad & orior*), to attack, assail; to begin.

Adscisco. See *Ascisco.*

Adspectus. See *Aspectus.*

Adsum, adesse, adfui, *irr. n.* (*ad & sum*), to be present, at hand *or* near; to assist.

Adventus, us, *m.* (*advenio*, to come), a coming, arrival, approach.

Adversus, a, um, *adj.* (*adverto*), opposite, adverse, hostile, unfavorable.

Adversus, *adv. & prep. with acc.* (*adverto*), against, opposite to, towards.

Adverto, ĕre, ti, sum, *a.* (*ad & verto*), to turn to, towards. *Advertere animum* or *animum advertere*, to apply one's thoughts to, observe, perceive.

Ædui, ōrum, *m.* The Ædui, a people of Celtic Gaul, whose country lay between the Loire and the Saone.

Æduus, a, um, *adj.*, Æduan.

Ægre, ægrius, ægerrĭme, *adv.* (*æger*), scarcely, with difficulty.

Æmilius, i, *m.*, Æmilius, a Roman name.

Æquo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to level, make smooth; to equal; make equal.

Æquus, a, um, *adj.*, level, smooth, equal; just, right.

Æs, æris, *n.*, copper, brass, money.

Æstas, ātis, *f.*, summer.

Ætas, ātis, *f.* (*for ævitas from ævum*, an age), age, time of life.

Affectus, a, um, *adj.* (*afficio*), moved, affected.

Affĕro, afferre, attŭli, allātum, *irr. a.* (*ad & fero*), to bring to; to take; to impart; to assert.

Affĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*ad & facio*), to move, affect, influence.

Affĭnĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*affinis*, contiguous), affinity, connection.

Ager, agri, *m.*, a field, ground; a territory, tract, country.

Aggrĕdior, i, essus sum, *dep.* (*ad & gradior*, to step), to go to, approach; to attack, assault.

Agmen, ĭnis, *n.* (*for agimen from ago*), an army on march; body. *In agmine*, on the march. *Primum agmen*, the van-guard, the first line of an army.

Ago, ĕre, egi, actum, *a. & n.*, to conduct, to drive, lead; to do, act, execute; to discourse with.

Aliēnus, a, um, *adj.* (*alius*), belonging to another, foreign, disadvantageous, unfavorable.

Alĭquis, qua, quod, or **quid,** *pro.* (*alius & quis*), some, some one, something.

Alius, a, ud, *adj.*, another, other, any other. *Alius — alius*, one — another. *Alii — alii*, some — others.

Allātus, a, um, *part.* (*affĕro*).

Allobrŏges, um, *m.*, the Allobroges. *The Allobroges inhabited the country near the junction of the Saone and the Rhone.*

Alo, ĕre, alui, alĭtum & altum, *a.*, to increase *or* support by feeding; to nourish, maintain; to defend.

Alpes, ĭum, *f.*, the Alps; lofty mountains separating Italy from France and Germany.

Alter, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, one of two; the other; the second. *Alteri — alteri*, the one party — the other.

Altitūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, height, depth.

Altus, a, um, *adj.*, high, deep.

Ambarri, ōrum, *m.*, the Ædui Ambarri, a people of Celtic Gaul whose territory was near the junction of the Saone and the Rhone.

Ambo, æ, o, *adj.*, both.

Amicĭtia, æ, *f.*, friendship, amity.

Amīcus, i, *m.*, a friend; an ally.

Amīcus, a, um, *adj.* (*amo*, to love), friendly, kind, cordial, benevolent.

Amittō, ĕre, ĭsi, issum, *a.* (*a & mitto*), to send away, dismiss; to lose.

Amor, ōris, *m.* (*amo*, to love), love, desire, affection.

Ample, *adv.* (*amplus*), (*amplius, amplissime*); amply, largely, highly.

Amplius, *adv.* (comp. of *ample*), more, further, longer; besides.

Amplus, a, um, *adj.*, large, spacious, ample.

Anceps, ĭpĭtis, *adj.* (*am*, around, *& caput*), having two heads; double; uncertain, doubtful.

Angustia, æ, *f.*, narrowness; a narrow place, defile; *it is most frequently used in the plural; from*

Angustus, a, um, *adj.*, strait, narrow, close, confined.

Ănimadvertō, ĕre, ti, sum, *a.* (*animus & adverto*), to take heed, attend, take notice of; to perceive; to punish.

Anĭmal, ălis, *n.* (*anima*), an animal.

Anĭmus, i, *m.*, wind, breath; life; the mind, soul; intention.

Annus, i, *m.*, a year.

Annuus, a, um, *adj.* (*annus*), lasting a year; recurring every year, annual.

Ante, *prep. with acc.*, before, previous [to.

Ante, *adv.*, before, formerly, previously.

Antea, *adv.* (*ante & ea, acc. pl. of is*), before, formerly, previously.

Antĕquam, *conj.*, before that.

Antīquus, a, um, *adj.* (*ante*), old, ancient; former.

Apertus, a, um, *adj.* (*aperio*), open, uncovered, unprotected, exposed.

Appellō, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to call, name, address.

Aprīlis, is, *m.*, the month of April.

Apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, close by, near, among, in presence of.

Aqua, æ, *f.*, water.

Aquĭla, æ, *f.*, an eagle; *also*, the standard *or* ensign of a Roman legion.

Aquĭlēia, æ, *f.*, Aquileia, a sea-port at the northern extremity of the Adriatic or Gulf of Venice.

Aquitāni, orum, *m.*, the Aquitanians, *or* inhabitants of Aquitania.

Aquitania, æ, *f.*, Aquitania, one of the three principal divisions of Gaul.

Aquitānus, a, um, *adj.* (*Aquitania*), Aquitanian, of Aquitania; *subs.* an Aquitanian.

Arar, ăris, or **Arăris, is,** *m.*, the Saone, a river of Celtic Gaul uniting with the Rhone near Lyons; *acc. sing.* **Ararim**; *abl. sing.* **Arare.**

Arbĭtror, āri, ātus sum, *dep.* (*arbiter*), to judge, think, imagine; suppose.

Arbor, *and* **Arbos, ŏris,** *f.*, a tree.

Arduus, a, um, *adj.*, high, steep, difficult.

Argentum, i, *n.*, silver.

Ariovistus, i, *m.*, a king of the Germans, who invaded Gaul, but was defeated by Cæsar.

Arma, ōrum, *n.*, arms, armor; war, warfare.

Artus or **Arctus, a, um,** *adj.* (*arceo*), straight, narrow, close, thick, dense.

Ascendo, ĕre, di, sum, *a. & n.* (*ad & scando*, to climb), to ascend, mount.

Ascensus, us, *m.* (*ascendo*), the act of ascending; an ascent.

Ascisco, ĕre, īvi, ītum, *a.* (*ad & scisco*, to approve), to receive, admit, unite.

Aspectus, us, *m.* (*aspicio*, to behold), a looking at; the sight; countenance, appearance, view.

Asper, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, rough, rugged, harsh, cruel.

At, *conj.*, but, yet; at least.

Atque, *conj.* (*ad & que*), the same as *ac*; and, and also; and indeed. *Idem atque*, the same as.

Attingo, ĕre, ĭgi, actum, *a.* (*ad & tango*), to touch, reach, arrive at; to border upon.

Attribuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.* (*ad & tribuo*), to attribute, assign, ascribe, impute.

Auctorĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*auctor*), authority; influence; reputation.

Auctus, a, um, *adj.* (*augeo*), enlarged, increased, promoted.

Audacia, æ, *f.* (*audax*, bold), boldness, intrepidity; impudence.

Audax, *adj.*, bold.

Audacĭter and **Audacter,** *adv.* (*audax*, bold), boldly, confidently.

Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, *n.*, to dare, adventure; to presume, attempt.

Audiens, tis, *adj.*, hearing; obedient.

Audio, īre, īvi, ītum, *a.*, to hear, heed; to obey.

Augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *a.*, to increase, amplify, augment; to advance, promote.

Aut, *conj.*, or; either; *aut — aut*, either — or.

Autem, *conj.*, but, nevertheless, moreover.

Auxilium, i, *n.* (*augeo*), assistance, help, succor, aid; *pl.* auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.

Avaritia, æ, *f.* (*avārus*, covetous), avarice, covetousness, greedy desire.

Aversus, a, um, *adj.*, turned away. *Hostis aversus*, a flying enemy.

Averto, ĕre, ti, sum, *a.* (*ab & verto*), turn off *or* away, avert, withdraw; remove.

Avis, is, *f.*, a bird, fowl.

Avus, i, *m.*, a grandfather.

B.

Belgæ, ārum, *m.*, the Belgians; the inhabitants of Belgic Gaul, or the region bounded by the Marne, the Seine, the Rhine, and the ocean.

Bellicōsus, a, um, *adj.* (*bellum*), warlike.

Bello, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.*, to war; to wage *or* carry on war.

Bellum, i, *n.*, war; a battle, fight. *Bellum facere alicui*, to make war upon.

Bene, *adv.*; *melius, optime*; well; successfully, happily.

Beneficium, i, *n.* (*bene & facio*), a kindness, favor.

Bibracte, is, *n.*, Bibracte or Autun, the principal city of the Ædui.

Biduum, i, *n.* (*bis & dies*), the space of two days, two days.

Biennium, i, *n.* (*bis & annus*), the space of two years, two years.

Bini, æ, a, *adj.* (*bis*), two, two by two.

Bipartīto, *adv.* (*bipartītus*, divided into two parts), in two parts *or* divisions.

Bis, *adv.*, twice, on two occasions.

Bituriges, um, *m.*, the Bituriges, a people of Celtic Gaul, whose territories were west of the Loire, by which they were separated from the Ædui.

Boii, ōrum, *m.*, the Boii, a people of Celtic Gaul, whose country lay between the rivers Loire and Allier.

Bonĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*bonus*), goodness; kindness, favor.

Bonum, i, *n.*, a good thing; benefit; **bona**, *n. pl.*, goods, property, effects; *from*

Bonus, a, um, *adj.*, *melior*, *optimus*; good; suitable; brave; friendly.

Brachium, i, *n.*, the arm.

Brevis, e, *adj.*, short, transitory, brief. **Brevi**, *abl.* in a short time, shortly.

Brevĭter, *adv.* (*brevis*), shortly, in brief, summarily.

C.

C., an abbreviation of the *prænomen Caius*. *In Roman notation*, a hundred.

Cado, ĕre, **cecĭdi**, **casum**, *n.*, to fall, tumble; to fall *or* die in battle, be slain, perish.

Cædes, is, *f.*, a cutting, striking; murder, slaughter, destruction.

Cædo, ĕre, **cecīdi**, **cæsum**, *a.*, to cut, fell, to strike; to kill, destroy.

Cæsar, ăris, *m.*, Cæsar, a family name in the Julian *gens*. *Caius Julius Cæsar*, son of Lucius Julius Cæsar and Aurelia, the daughter of Cotta. After the conquest of the Germans, Gauls, and Britains, he established himself as sole monarch of the Roman empire.

Caius, i, *m.*, a common prænomen among the Romans.

Calamĭtas, ātis, *f.*, calamity, misfortune, disaster.

Calendæ, ārum, *f. pl.* (*calo*, to call), the first day of the month; the calends.

Campus, i, *m.*, a plain, field.

Cano, ĕre, **cecĭni**, **cantum**, *n.* & *a.*, to sing; to prophesy.

Cantus, us, *m.*, song.

Capio, ĕre, **cepi**, **captum**, *a.*, to take; to receive; to seize, occupy; to capture; to acquire.

Captīvus, a, um, *adj.* (*capio*), captive, taken prisoner; *subs.* a prisoner, captive. [son.

Caput, ĭtis, *n.*, a head; a man, a per-

Caro, carnis, *f.*, the flesh of animals.

Carrus, i, *m.*, & **Carrum**, i, *n.*, a cart; wagon.

Carus, a, um, *adj.*, dear, precious.

Cassiānus, a, um, *adj.* (*Cassius*), of *or* belonging to Cassius; Cassian.

Cassis, ĭdis, *f.*, a helmet.

Cassius, i, *m.*, Cassius, the name of a Roman *gens*. *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, a Roman consul defeated by the Helvetii.

Castellum, i, *n.* *dim.* (*castrum*, a fort), a castle, fortress, redoubt.

Castĭcus, i, *m.*, Casticus, one of the Sequani.

Castra, ōrum, *n.*, a camp, encampment.

Casus, us, *m.* (*cado*), a falling, misfortune, calamity, accident, opportunity, chance. **Casu**, *abl.*, by chance, accidentally.

Catamantalēdes, is, *m.*, Catamantaledes, a chief of the Sequani.

Catēna, æ, *f.*, a chain; fetters.

Caturĭges, um, *m.*, the Caturiges, a Gallic nation inhabiting the Alps.

Causa, æ, *f.*, a cause, reason.

Caveo, ēre, **cavi**, **cautum**, *n.* & *a.*, to beware *or* take heed of; to be on one's guard; to avoid.

Cedo, ĕre, **cessi**, **cessum**, *n.* & *a.*, to give place, yield, withdraw, retire.

Celĕber, bris, bre, *adj.*, famous.

Celer, ĕris, ĕre, *adj.*, swift, quick.

Celeriter, *adv.* (*celer*), quickly, speedily.

Celo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to hide, conceal.

Celtæ, ārum, *m.*, the Celts *or* inhabitants of Celtic Gaul.

Censeo, ēre, ui, censum, *a.*, to think, judge, suppose; to advise.

Census, us, *m.* (*censeo*), a census; an enumeration.

Centrōnes, um, *m.*, the Centrones, a Gallic nation inhabiting the Alps.

Centum, *ind. num. adj.*, a hundred.

Centurio, ōnis, *m.* (*centuria*), a centurion; originally a captain over a hundred infantry, or a thirtieth part of the infantry in a legion.

Cerno, ĕre, crevi, cretum, *a.*, to sift; to distinguish, resolve; to see, discern; to perceive.

Certe, *adv.* (*certus*), certainly, assuredly, at least, at all events.

Certo, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.*, to contend, contest, struggle, fight.

Certus, a, um, *adj.*, determined; fixed upon; certain; sure.

Cetĕra, um, *adj.* (*nom. sing. masc. not used*), the rest, residue; other.

Cibarius, a, um, *adj.*, relating to food; *subs.* cibarium, *i. n.*, the second sort of flour; coarse bread; **cibaria, ōrum,** victuals, food, provisions. **Cibaria molita,** ground corn, meal *or* flour; *from*

Cibus, i, *m.*, food, nourishment.

Circa, *prep. with acc.*, & *adv.*, about, around.

Circiter, *adv.*, & *prep. with acc.*, about, near.

Circuitus, us, *m.* (*circueo*), a going round; a circuit, a circuitous path.

Circum, *prep. with acc.*, & *adv.*, around, about; near.

Circumdo, āre, dĕdi, dātum, *a.* (*circum* & *do*), to put *or* set round; to surround, encompass, environ.

Circumdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*circum* & *duco*), to lead *or* draw around.

Circumvēnio, īre, ēni, entum, *a.* (*circum* & *venio*), to come *or* stand around; to surround, to encompass, invest.

Cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side. *It is commonly joined to names of places, and in Roman writers usually denotes the side nearest to Rome.*

Cisalpīnus, a, um, *adj.* (*cis* & *Alpes*), Cisalpine, on this side the Alps, *i. e.*, on the side nearest to Rome.

Citerior, ōris, *adj. comp.* (*cis*), nearer, hither.

Cito, *adv.*, shortly, quickly, speedily.

Citra, *adv.* & *prep. with acc.* (*cis*), on this side, *i. e.*, *on the side next to the writer or speaker.*

Civis, is, *m.* & *f.*, a citizen, a free man *or* woman.

Civĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*civis*), an assemblage of citizens; a city *or* state.

Clam, *adv.*, & *prep. with acc. or abl.*, without the knowledge of, secretly.

Clamor, ōris, *m.* (*clamo*), a loud voice, cry, shout.

Clarus, a, um, *adj.*, clear, bright; famous, illustrious.

Claudo, ĕre, si, sum, *a.*, to shut, close.

Cliens, tis, *m.* & *f.*, a client, one under the protection of a patron; a vassal.

Coĕmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *a.* (*con* & *emo*), to buy, to purchase.

Cœpi, isse, *def.*, I began; *perf. pass. cœptus sum*, I began.

Coerceo, ĕre, ui, itum, *a.* (*con* & *arceo*, to restrain), to embrace; to keep in, confine, restrain.

Cognosco, ĕre, ōvi, itum, *a.* (*con* & *nosco*), to know; to hear, learn, find out, ascertain, investigate.

Cogo, ĕre, coēgi, coactum, *a.* (*con & ago*), to bring *or* collect together; to drive, impel, to constrain, force.

Cohors, tis, *f.*, a cohort, a band of foot soldiers consisting of three *manipuli*, *or* six centuries, the tenth part of a legion.

Cohortor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.* (*con & hortor*), to exhort, encourage.

Collēga, æ, *m.*, a colleague, partner in office.

Colligo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*con & ligo*, to bind), to bind *or* tie together; to join together, connect.

Colligo, ĕre, ēgi, ectum, *a.* (*con & lego*), to gather together, collect, assemble.

Collis, is, *m.*, a hill, easy ascent, rising ground.

Collŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*con & loco*, to place), to place, settle; to dispose. *Collocare* or *nuptum collocare*, to give in marriage.

Colloquium, i, *n.*, conversation; a conference, interview.

Colo, ĕre, ui, cultum, *a.*, to exercise, practice, labor upon; to respect, worship.

Color, ōris, *m.*, a color.

Combūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *a.* (*con & uro*, to burn), to burn together, burn *or* consume utterly.

Comes, ĭtis, *m. & f.* (*con. & eo*, to go), a companion, associate, comrade.

Commemŏro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* *con & memŏro*, to mention), to call to mind, relate.

Commeo, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.* (*con & meo*, to go), to go and come, visit.

Commilĭto, ōnis, *m.* (*con & milito*), a fellow-soldier, comrade.

Committo, ĕre, isi, issum, *a.* (*con & mitto*), to join together, unite; cause, perform; to commit. *Committere prœlium, etc.*, to begin a battle, to fight.

Commŏde, *adv.* (*commŏdus*), fitly, conveniently, advantageously.

Commŏdus, a, um, *adj.* (*con & modus*), convenient, fit, suitable, useful.

Commonefăcio, ĕre, ēci, actum, *a.* (*commoneo*, to remind, *& facio*), to put in mind, remind, warn.

Commŏveo, ĕre, ōvi, ōtum, *a.* (*con & moveo*), to move together *or* wholly; to affect, to disquiet, alarm.

Communio, īre, īvi, ītum, *a.* (*con & munio*), to fortify.

Commūnis, e, *adj.*, common, general, universal.

Commutatio, ōnis, *f.* (*commuto*), a change, alteration.

Commūto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*con & muto*), to change, to alter.

Compăro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*con & paro*), to procure, prepare; to provide.

Compĕrio, īre, pĕri, pertum, *a.* (*con & perio*), to discover, find out, ascertain.

Complector, i, exus sum, *dep.* (*con & plecto*, to twine), to encircle; to comprehend, embrace.

Compleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *a.* (*con & pleo, obs.*), to fill, fill up.

Complūres, ūra, *gen.* **urium,** *adj.* (*con & plus*), many, very many.

Compōno, ĕre, sui, sĭtum, *a.* (*con & pono*), to put *or* place together; to place in order, arrange, dispose, compose.

Comporto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*con & porto*), to carry *or* bring together, collect.

Conātum, i, *n.* (*conor*), an endeavor, effort, undertaking.

Conātus, us, *m.* (*conor*), endeavor, effort, undertaking.

Concēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, *n. & a.* (*con & cedo*), to retire, yield, depart, withdraw; to grant, allow.

Concīdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum, *a.* (*con & cædo*), to cut, cut in pieces; kill, slay, destroy.

Concīdo, ĕre, īdi, *n.* (*con & cado*), to fall down; to die.

Concīlio, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to unite, compose; to conciliate, reconcile.

Concīlium, i, *n.* (*concieo*, to call together), an assembly, meeting, council. Concilium *is properly an assembly of hearers*, consilium *an assembly for deliberation.*

Concurro, ĕre, curri, cursum, *n.* (*con & currro*), to run together, flock *or* rush together; unite, agree.

Concursus, us, *m.* (*concurro*), a running *or* meeting together; an assembly, concourse; a conflict, charge.

Condemno, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*con & damno*), to condemn.

Conditio, ōnis, *f.* (*condo*, to put together), a making, constructing; a state, situation, condition, rule.

Condūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a. & n.* (*con & duco*), to bring *or* lead together, collect.

Conferō, ferre, contŭli, collātum, *a. irr.* (*con & fero*), to bring, carry, put *or* lay together; to collect, gather, to give, to confer.

Conflicio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*con & facio*), to make, cause, effect; to accomplish, to execute. *Conficere tabulas literis Græcis*, to compose, write —.

Confido, ĕre, īsus sum, *n. pass.* (*con & fido*, to trust), to trust; to confide in, to rely upon.

Confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*con & firmo*), to confirm, strengthen; to encourage, assert, assure.

Conjicio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, *a.* (*con & jacio*), to throw together; to cast, drive, force, to put, place.

Conjuratio, ōnis, *f.*, a confederacy, combination; a conspiracy, plot.

Conjux, ŭgis, *m. & f.* (*conjugo*, to join together), a husband, wife, consort.

Conor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.*, to strive, endeavor, attempt, try, undertake.

Conquīro, ĕre, sīvi, sītum, *a.* (*con & quæro*), to seek after, search after.

Consanguineus, a, um, *adj.* (*con & sanguineus*, bloody), related by blood. *Consanguineus, i. m.*, a relation; *pl.* relations, kindred.

Consciscō, ĕre, īvi, ītum, *a.* (*con & scisco*, to ordain), to vote together; to resolve, decree. *Consciscere sibi mortem*, to lay violent hands on one's self, to commit suicide.

Conscius, a, um, *adj.* (*con & scius*), knowing), conscious, witness of, partaking of.

Conscrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *a.* (*con & scribo*), to write together; to compose; to raise, levy, enrol.

Consensus, us, *m.*, consent, agreement.

Consĕquor, i, cūtus sum, *dep.* (*con & sequor*), to follow, go after; to pursue, obtain, effect, complete.

Considius, i, *m.* (P.) Considius, one of Cæsar's officers in the Gallic war.

Consīdo, ĕre, ēdi, essum, *n.* (*con & sido*, to light), to sit down; to meet, to settle, take up one's abode, encamp.

Consilium, i, *n.* (*consulo*), advice, deliberation; a design, plan, scheme, purpose, judgment, resolve.

Consisto, ĕre, stīti, *n.* (*con & sisto*, to stand), to stand firmly, place *or* station one's self; to stay, to withstand, to rest.

Consōlor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.* (*con & solor*, to console), to console, comfort; to encourage.

Conspectus, us, *m.* (*conspicio*), a sight, view.

Conspicor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.* (*con*

& *specio*, to see), to see, behold, descry.

Constĭtuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.* (*con* & *statuo*), to set up, erect; to appoint, constitute, resolve, decide, to decree, ordain.

Consul, ŭlis, *m.* (*consŭlo*), a consul, one of the chief magistrates annually elected at Rome.

Consulātus, us, *m.* (*consul*), the office of consul, consulship, *or* consulate; *also*, the time of his office.

Consŭlo, ĕre, ui, tum, *n.* & *a.*, to consult, deliberate; to provide for, take care of.

Consūmo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *a.* (*con* & *sumo*), to eat up, devour, consume, destroy.

Contemno, ĕre, mpsi, mptum, *a.* (*con* & *temno*, to despise), to make no account of, to contemn, despise, slight.

Contendo, ĕre, di, tum, *a.* & *n.* (*con* & *tendo*), to stretch, to strive; to contend, fight, hasten, to proceed.

Continenter, *adv.* (*continens*), continually; without intermission.

Continentia, æ, *f.*, a holding back, keeping in; temperance, moderation: *from*

Contineo, ēre, tinui, tentum, *a.* (*con* & *teneo*), to contain, to limit; to hold, retain.

Contra, *prep. with acc.*, & *adv.*, against, contrary to, in opposition to; on the other hand.

Contrarius, a, um, *adj.* (*contra*), opposite, contrary.

Contumelia, æ, *f.*, an affront, a reproach, outrage, insult.

Convalesco, ĕre, lui, *n.* (*con* & *valesco*, to grow strong), to acquire strength, grow strong.

Convĕnio, īre, ēni, entum, *n.* & *a.* (*con* & *venio*), to come together; assemble, collect.

Converto, ĕre, ti, sum, *a.* (*con* & *verto*), to turn about, to turn back; to change.

Convŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*con* & *voco*), to call together, assemble.

Copia, æ, *f.* (*con* & *ops*), plenty, abundance; a supply; *pl.* an armed force, army; forces.

Copiōsus, a, um, *adj.* (*copia*), abundantly provided, rich, wealthy.

Cor, dis, *n.*, the heart.

Coram, *prep. with abl.*, before, in presence of, openly.

Cornu, *n.*, a horn, a trumpet; the wing of an army.

Corpus, ŏris, *n.*, a body.

Corrumpo, ĕre, ūpi, uptum, *a.* (*con* & *rumpo*, to burst), to waste, impair, injure, corrupt.

Crassus, i, *m.*, Crassus, a Roman family name. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, a Roman distinguished for his prodigious wealth.

Credo, ĕre, ĭdi, ĭtum, *n.* & *a.*, to credit, believe, trust.

Creo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to make, create, generate; to appoint, elect.

Cresco, ĕre, crevi, cretum, *n.*, to increase, grow; thrive.

Crimen, ĭnis, *n.*, a charge, accusation, indictment.

Cruciātus, us, *m.* (*crucio*), torment, torture.

Crudēlis, e, *adj.* (*crudus*), cruel, fierce, inhuman.

Culpa, æ, *f.*, a fault, blame, guilt.

Cultus, us, *m.* (*colo*), cultivation, culture.

Cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.

Cum. See *Quum*.

Cupĭde, *adv.* (*cupidus*), fondly, eagerly, desirously.

Cupidĭtas, ātis, *f.*, desire, fondness; eagerness, lust, avarice.

Cupĭdus, a, um, *adj.* (*cupio*), desirous, fond, eager.

Cupio, ĕre, ivi, itum, *a.* (*capio*), to covet, desire, wish, long for; to be friendly to.

Cura, æ, *f.* (*quæro*), care, concern, anxiety.

Curo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* to take care of, see to, look to.

Curro, ĕre, cucurri, cursum, *n.*, to run.

Currus, us, *m.* (*curro*), a chariot, car, wagon.

Cursus, us, *m.* (*curro*), a running; a course, speed.

Custos, ŏdis, *m. & f.*, a keeper, guard, watch.

D.

D., an abbreviation of the *prænomen Decimus.*

Damno, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to condemn.

Damnum, i, *n.*, loss, hurt, damage.

De, *prep. with abl.*, of, about, concerning, from, from among; after.

Debeo, ēre, ui, itum, *a.* (*de & habeo*), to owe. *With the infinitive it denotes duty*, it is proper, it is indispensable, one ought.

Decēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, *n.* (*de & cedo*), to depart, withdraw.

Decem, *num. adj. ind.*, ten.

Decerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *a.* (*de & cerno*), to think, judge, to determine; to decree.

Decipio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, *a.* (*de & capio*), to deceive, beguile.

Decurio, ōnis, *m.* (*decuria*), *originally it signified* the commander of a *decuria* or ten horsemen. *It is used also for the captain or commander of a* turma *or troop, consisting of thirty-two horsemen.*

Deditio, ōnis, *f.* (*dedo*), a yielding up, surrender, submission, capitulation.

Deditītius, a, um, *adj.* (*deditio*), one who has surrendered. *Subs.* **deditītii, ōrum,** *m.*, subjects.

Dedĭtus, a, um, *adj.*, given up; devoted, addicted, attached to.

Dedo, ĕre, idi, itum, *a.* (*de & do*), to give *or* deliver up; surrender.

Dedūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*de & duco*), to bring down; to convey, withdraw, remove, bring *or* lead forth.

Defendo, ĕre, di, sum, *a.* (*de & fendo obs.*), to keep *or* ward off, repel; to defend, protect, guard.

Defessus, a, um (*part. from defĭtiscor*), weary, worn out.

Deficio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *n. & a.* (*de & facio*), to fail, be wanting; to perish; *with acc.* to abandon, forsake. *Deficere ab aliquo*, revolt from —.

Deinde, *adv.* (*de & inde*), then, afterwards, in the next place.

Dejĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*de & jacio*), to throw *or* cast down; to overthrow.

Delecto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*de & lacto*, to allure), to allure; to delight.

Delibĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*de & libro*), to consult, deliberate, weigh, consider.

Deligo, āre, āvi, atum, *a.* (*de & ligo*, to bind), to bind.

Delĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, ectum, *a.* (*de & lĕgo*), to select, choose.

Deminuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.* (*de & minuo*), to diminish, lessen.

Demonstro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*de & monstro*), to show, prove.

Demum, *adv.*, at length, finally.

Denique, *adv.*, in fine, lastly.

Depōno, ĕre, sui, sĭtum, *a.* (*de & pono*), to lay *or* put down; to lay aside, to leave, give up.

Depopŭlor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.* (*de & populor*), to lay waste, pillage, ravage.

Deprecātor, ōris, *m.*, an intercessor, mediator.

Desĭlio, īre, īlui, *or* ĭi, ultum, *n.* (*de & salio*, to leap), to jump *or* leap down, alight.

Desisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, *n.* (*de & sisto*, to stand), to stand still; to cease, discontinue.

Despēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *n. & a.* (*de & spero*), to despair.

Despĭcio, ĕre, exi, ectum, *a.* (*de & specio*, to see), to look down upon; to despise.

Destringo, ĕre, inxi, ictum, *a.* (*de & stringo*, to tie hard), to strip, pull *or* pluck off; to draw.

Desum, esse, fui, *n. irr.* (*de & sum*), to fail, be wanting *or* lacking.

Desŭper, *adv.* (*de & super*), from above.

Deterreo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, *a.* (*de & terreo*), to deter, frighten; to hinder.

Detrăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*de & traho*), to draw down, pull off, take away, remove.

Deus, i, *m.*, a god, deity *or* divinity.

Dexter, tĕra, *and* **tra, tĕrum** *and* **trum,** *adj.*, on the right hand, right.

Dextĕra, *and* **Dextra, æ,** *f.*, *sc.* *manus*, the right hand.

Di, *or* **Dis,** *inseparable prep.*, *it denotes* separation *or* division, *and sometimes* negation.

Dĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to dedicate, devote, consecrate.

Dĭco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.*, to speak, say, tell; recount, narrate, relate, appoint.

Dictio, ōnis, *f.* (*dico*), a speaking, a phrase, a discourse, a pleading, a defense.

Dies, ēi, *m. & f.*, a day; time.

Differo, ferre, distŭli, dilātum, *irr. a.* (*dis & fero*), to scatter, disperse; to spread abroad, publish; to defer; to differ.

Difficĭlĭter (ĭùs, limè), *adv.*, with difficulty.

Difficĭlis, e, *adj.* (*di & facilis*), hard, difficult.

Diffĭdo, ĕre, fĭsus sum, *n. pass.* (*dis & fido*, to trust), to distrust.

Dimidium, i, *n.*, the half.

Dimidius, a, um, *adj.* (*dis & medius*), halved, divided into two equal parts, half. *Dimidia pars, the same as dimidium*, half *or* the half.

Diminuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.* (*dis & minuo*), to diminish, lessen.

Dimitto, ĕre, isi, issum, *a.* (*dis & mitto*), send off; to dismiss, discharge; to reject, abandon.

Dis, *m. & f.*, **dite,** *n.*, *gen.* **ditis,** *adj.*, rich, wealthy, opulent.

Discēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, *n.* (*dis & cedo*), to depart, go away, leave, set out.

Disco, ĕre, dĭdici, *a. & n.*, to learn, acquire; to understand.

Disjĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*dis & jacio*), to cast asunder, overthrow, disperse, scatter, rout.

Dispōno, ĕre, osui, ositum, *a.* (*dis & pono*), to place here and there, dispose, order, arrange.

Dissimŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*dis & simulo*), to dissemble, cloak, disguise, conceal, counterfeit.

Distribuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.* (*dis & tribuo*), to divide, distribute.

Ditissĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of dis*).

Diu, *adv.*, long, for a long time. **Diutius,** too long.

Diuturnus, a, um, *adj.* (*diu*), of long duration *or* continuance, lasting, continual.

Divĭco, ōnis, *m.*, Divico, a Helvetian general.

Divitiăcus, i, *m.*, Divitiacus, a chief of the Ædui and a Druid.

Do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *a.*, to give, bestow, grant; to allow.

Doceo, ēre, cui, ctum, *a.*, to show; to teach, instruct.

Doleo, ēre, ui, ĭtūm, *n. & a.*, to grieve, mourn, deplore, lament.

Dolor, ōris, *m.* (*doleo*), grief, pain, distress.

Dominor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.*, to be lord and master; rule, domineer.

Dominus, i, *m.* (*domus*), a master of a house, lord, ruler.

Domus, us, *and* **i,** *f.*, a house, home, habitation.

Dubitatio, ōnis, *f.* (*dubito*), a doubting; doubt, uncertainty, hesitation.

Dubĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *n. & a.*, to doubt, be uncertain, hesitate.

Dubius, a, um, *adj.* (*duo*), doubtful, uncertain.

Duco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.*, to draw, lead, conduct; think, consider.

Dum, *adv. & conj.*, while; until.

Dumnŏrix, ĭgis, *m.*, Dumnorix, a leader of the Ædui.

Duo, as, o, *num. adj.*, two.

Duodĕcim, *ind. num. adj.* (*duo & decem*), twelve.

Duodeviginti, *num. adj. ind.* (*duo, de, & viginti*), eighteen.

Duplex, ĭcis, *adj.* (*duo & plico*, to fold), double, twofold.

Dux, ducis, *m. & f.*, a leader, guide, conductor; general, captain.

E.

E *or* **Ex,** *prep. with abl.* **E** *stands before consonants only,* ex *before either vowels or consonants.* From, out of, of.

Edo, ĕre, ĭdi, ĭtum, *a.* (*e & do*), to utter *or* put forth; to produce; to declare; to exhibit; to publish.

Edūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*e & duco*), to draw *or* lead forth; to raise; to maintain, educate.

Effemĭno, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*ex & femina*), to make feminine; to enervate.

Effĕro, efferre, extŭli, elātum, *a. irr.* (*ex & fero*), carry forth *or* out; to publish, proclaim; to raise, exalt.

Efficio, ĕre, effēci, ectum, *a.* (*ex & facio*), to bring to pass, do, effect, accomplish, complete.

Effŭgio, ĕre, ūgi, ugĭtum, *n. & a.* (*ex & fugio*), to fly, escape; to avoid, shun.

Ego, mei, *pro., m. & f.*, I; *pl.*, **Nos,** we.

Egŏmet, *intensive pro. m. & f.*, I myself. **Nosmet,** we ourselves.

Egrĕdior, i, essus sum, *dep.* (*e & gradior*, to go), to go out, depart; to go beyond.

Egregius, a, um, *adj.* (*e & grex*), excellent, remarkable, eminent, surpassing.

Emĭgro, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.* (*e & migro*, to remove), to remove from one place to another, migrate.

Emitto, ĕre, ĭsi, issum, *a.* (*e & mitto*), to send forth *or* out, let go.

Emo, ĕre, emi, emptum, *a.*, to buy, purchase.

Enim, *conj.*, for, indeed.

Enumĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*e & numero*), to enumerate, recount, reckon up, recite.

Enuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*e & nuntio*), to say out; divulge, disclose; to declare.

Eo, īre, īvi, *or* **ii, ĭtum,** *n. irr.*, to go, march, proceed.

Eò, *adv.* (*is*), thither, to that place.

Eodem, *adv.* (*idem*), to the same place; to the same purpose, end, *or* object.

Eques, ĭtis, *m. & f.* (*equus*), a horseman; a knight. **Equites,** knights; cavalry, horsemen.

Equester, tres, tre, *adj.* (*eques*), pertaining to a horseman; equestrian.

Equitātus, us, *m.* (*equito*, to ride on horseback), riding; cavalry, a body of horsemen.

Equus, i, *m.*, a horse, steed.

Eripio, ĕre, ui, eptum, *a.* (*e & rapio*, to snatch), to take away by force; to free, rescue, save, deliver from.

Et, *conj.*, and, even; also; **et — et**, both — and.

Etiam, *conj.*, also, likewise, besides; even.

Evello, ĕre, i, *or* **evulsi**, **evulsum**, *a.* (*e & vello*), to pull up *or* out, pluck up.

Ex. See *E.*

Excēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, *n.* (*ex & cedo*), to depart, go forth *or* out, retire, withdraw.

Excĭpio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, *a.* (*ex & capio*), to receive, take up; to catch; to undertake.

Exemplum, i, *n.* (*eximo*, to take out), a copy; an example, instance, precedent.

Exeo, īre, īvi, *and* ii, ĭtum, *n. irr.* (*ex & eo*), to go out *or* forth, depart; to escape.

Exercĭtus, us, *m.* (*exerceo*), an army.

Existimatio, ōnis, *f.* (*existimo*), estimation; an opinion; reputation, character.

Existĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*ex & æstimo*), to judge, think, repute, esteem.

Expĕdio, īre, īvi, *or* ii, ĭtum, *a. & n.* (*ex & pes*), to free, liberate, disentangle, extricate; to dispatch, finish.

Expedĭtus, a, um, *adj.* (*expedio*), freed, liberated; unencumbered, light-armed. [scout.

Explorātor, ōris, *m.* (*exploro*), a spy,

Expōno, ĕre, osui, ĭtum, *a.*, to expose, explain.

Expugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*ex & pugno*), to take *or* carry by storm; to conquer, vanquish.

Exsĕquor, i, cūtus sum, *dep.* (*ex & sequor*), to follow, pursue; to prosecute, finish; to assert.

Exspecto, āre, āvi, ātum, *n. & a.* (*ex & specto*), to look *or* wait for, expect.

Extĕrus, *or* **Exter**, a, um, *adj.* (*ex*), of another country, foreign; outward, outer, exterior.

Extra, *adv. & prep. with acc.*, without, out of, outside of.

Extrēmus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of exterus*), extreme; last, final; farthest, remotest.

Exūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *a.* (*ex & uro*, to burn), to burn, burn up.

F.

Faber, bri, *m.*, one who works in wood, iron, brass, marble, etc.; a carpenter, smith, artificer, mechanic.

Fabius, i, *m.*, Fabius, the name of a distinguished patrician family.

Facilè, *adv.*, easily, without difficulty; certainly.

Facĭlis, e, *adj.* (*facio*), easy, ready, prosperous.

Facinus, ŏris, *n.*, a bold *or* audacious act, crime, wickedness.

Facio, ĕre, ēci, actum, *a. & n.*, to make, do; to act, to perform.

Factum, i, *n.*, a deed, act.

Facultas, ātis, *f.* (*facilis*), power, ability, occasion, opportunity, resources.

Fallo, ĕre, fefelli, falsum, *a. & n.*, to deceive, delude, mislead.

Fama, æ, *f.*, fame, report, rumor.

Fames, is, *f.*, hunger, fasting.

Familia, æ, *f.* (*famŭlus*, a servant), the slaves belonging to one master; the vassals, serfs.

Familiāris, e, *adj.* (*familia*), of *or* belonging to the same family; familiar, friendly. *Res familiaris*, property. *Subs.*, a friend, aquaintance.

Fas, *n. ind.*, divine law; justice, equity, right.

Faveo, ĕre, fāvi, fautum, *n.*, to favor, countenance, befriend.

Ferè, *or* **Ferme**, *adv.*, almost, nearly, generally.

Fĕro, fĕrre, tŭli, lātum, *a.*, to bear, bring. *Pass.*, to say, relate, report.

Ferrum, i, *n.*, iron; any instrument of iron, a sword.

Fides, ĕi, *f.* (*fido*, to trust), faith, truth, honesty; a promise, engagement.

Filia, æ, *f.*, a daughter.

Filius, i, *m.*, a son.

Fingo, ĕre, finxi, fictum, *a.*, to form, fashion; to feign; to imagine.

Finis, is, *m.* & *f.*, an end; *pl.* limits, boundaries; a territory.

Finitĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*finis*), neighboring, bordering upon, adjoining.

Finitimi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, neighbors.

Fio, fĭĕri, factus sum, *irr. pass. of facio*, to be made; to become; to occur, happen, come to pass.

Firmus, a, um, *adj.*, firm, constant; resolute.

Flagĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to importune any one, demand.

Fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *n.* & *a.*, to weep, shed tears, lament, bewail.

Fletus, us, *m.* (*fleo*), weeping, tears.

Flos, flōris, *m.*, a flower, blossom.

Fluctus, us, *m.* (*fluo*), a wave, surge, billow.

Flumen, ĭnis, *n.* (*fluo*), a stream; a river.

Fluo, ĕre, xi, xum, *n.*, to flow.

Forem, es, et, *etc.*, *def.*, I might be, etc.; *inf.* fore, *the same in sense as futurus esse; with a subject accusative*, will *or* would be, occur *or* happen.

Fors, tis, *f.*, chance, fortune. *Abl.* forte, by chance, accidentally.

Fortis, e, *adj.* (*fero*), brave, gallant, valiant, courageous.

Fortĭter, *adv.* (*fortis*), bravely, gallantly, courageously.

Fortitūdo, ĭnis, *f.* (*fortis*), bravery, courage.

Fortūna, æ, *f.* (*fors*), fortune, chance; *pl.* property, possessions, riches.

Fossa, æ, *f.* (*fodio*), a ditch.

Frango, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, *a.*, to break; to conquer, vanquish.

Frater, tris, *m.*, a brother.

Fraternus, a, um, *adj.* (*frater*), brotherly, fraternal.

Fraus, dis, *f.*, fraud, deceit, guile, treachery.

Frigus, ŏris, *n.*, cold.

Fructus, us, *m.* (*fruor*, to enjoy), the fruit of trees; profit.

Frumentarius, a, um, *adj.* (*frumentum*), of *or* belonging to corn. *Res frumentaria*, supply *or* provision of corn.

Frumentum, i, *n.*, corn *or* grain of all kinds.

Frustra, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose.

Fuga, æ, *f.*, flight; a running away.

Fŭgio, ĕre, fugi, fugĭtum, *n.* to flee *or* fly; to avoid, shun.

Fugitĭvus, a, um, *adj.* (*fugio*), fugitive, running away; *subs.*, a deserter.

Fugo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to put to flight, rout.

Fundo, ĕre, fudi, sum, *a.*, to pour; to scatter, discomfit, rout, disperse.

Furor, ōris, *m.* (*furo*, to be mad), fury, madness.

Futūrus, a, um, *part.* (*sum*), about to be, to come, future.

G.

Gabinius, i, *m.* Gabinius, a Roman gentile name.

Gallia, æ, *f.* Gaul. *Ancient Gaul was divided into two parts, Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, or* Gallia ulterior *and* Gallia citerior, *the former on the west and the latter on the east*

of the Alps. The former was nearly the same country as the modern France, but was bounded on the east by the Rhine and the Alps.

Gallĭcus, a, um, *adj.* (*Gallia*), of or pertaining to Gaul, Gallic.

Gallus, i, *m.*, a Gaul.

Gallus, a, um, *adj.*, Gallic.

Garumna, æ, *f.*, the Garonne.

Gaudĕo, ēre, **gavīsus sum**, *n.*, to rejoice, be glad.

Gener, ĕri, *m.*, a son-in-law.

Genēva, æ, *f.*, Geneva, a town of the Allobroges, at the western extremity of the lake of Geneva.

Genu, us, *n.*, a knee.

Genus, ĕris, *n.*, a race, kind, family.

Germānus, a, um, *adj.*, German.

Germania, æ, *f.*, Germany.

Gero, ĕre, **gessi**, **gestum**, *a.*, to bear, carry; to manage; to conduct.

Gloria, æ, *f.*, glory, renown, fame.

Glorior, āri, ātus sum, *dep.* (*gloria*), to glory, boast, vaunt.

Graiocĕli, ōrum, *m.*, the Graioceli.

Gratia, æ, *f.*, good-will; favor, popularity; influence; requital, gratitude, thanks; obligation.

Gratus, a, um, *adj.*, grateful, pleasing, acceptable, agreeable.

Gravis, e, *adj.*, heavy, weighty, important, severe, oppressive.

Graviter, *adv.* (*gravis*), heavily, strongly, severely, grievously.

H.

Habeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a. & n.*, to have, hold, possess; to occupy, esteem, consider.

Haud, *adv.*, not.

Helvetĭcus, *and* **Helvetius**, a, um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to Helvetia, Helvetian: *from*

Helvetii, ōrum, *m.*, the Helvetians, the Swiss, the inhabitants of Helvetia *or* Switzerland.

Hiberna, ōrum, *n.* (*hĭbernus*, wintry), winter-quarters.

Hic, **hæc**, **hoc**, *dem. pro.*, this, he; that. **Hoc**, *abl.*, on this account.

Hic, *adv.* (*hic*), here, in this place.

Hiĕmo, āre āvi, ātum, *n.*, to winter, pass the winter.

Hiems, ĕmis, *f.*, winter.

Hinc, *adv.* (*hic*), hence, from this place.

Hispania, æ, *f.*, Spain.

Hodie, *adv.* (*hoc & die*), to-day.

Homo, ĭnis, *m. & f.*, a man *or* woman.

Hōnor, *and* **honos**, ōris, *m.*, honor, respect, esteem.

Hora, æ, *f.*, an hour; a space of time, period.

Hortor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.*, to exhort, encourage, instigate, urge.

Hostis, is, *m. & f.*, an enemy.

Humanĭtas, ātis, *f.*, humanity, benevolence, refinement.

Humĕrus, i, *m.*, the shoulder.

I.

Ibi, *adv.*, there.

Ictus, us, *m.* (*ico*, to strike), a blow.

Idem, eădem, idem, *pro.* (*is & dem*), the same.

Idoneus, a, um, *adj.*, fit, proper, suitable.

Idus, uum, *f.*, the ides of a month, the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October, and the thirteenth of the other months.

Igĭtur, *conj.*, therefore, then.

Ignis, is, *m.*, fire.

Ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.* (*ignārus*, ignorant), to be ignorant of, be unacquainted with.

Ignosco, ĕre, ōvi, ōtum, *a. & n.* (*in & gnosco*), to pardon, excuse, overlook, forgive.

Ille, **illa**, **illud**, *pro.*, that.

Illic, *adv.*, there, in that place.

Illustris, e, *adj.* (*in & lustro*), clear, manifest; illustrious, famous.

Immortālis, e, *adj.* (*in & mortālis*, mortal), immortal, everlasting, eternal.

Impedimentum, i, *n.*, a hindrance; *pl.* baggage.

Impĕdio, īre, īvi, *and* ii, ītum, *a.* (*in & pes*), to entangle, hamper; to retard, obstruct.

Impedītus, a, um, *adj.* (*impedio*), entangled, embarrassed, hindered.

Impendeo, ēre, *n.* (*in & pendeo*, to hang over), to overhang, threaten.

Imperātor, ōris, *m.* (*impĕro*), a commander, leader, general.

Imperītus, a, um, *adj.* (*in & peritus*), unskillful, inexperienced.

Imperium, i, *n.* (*impero*), a command, order; power, authority.

Impĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.*, to command, enjoin, order; to demand, require.

Impetrātus, a, um, *part.: from*

Impĕtro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.* (*in & patro*, to effect), to obtain, get; accomplish; procure by request.

Impĕtus, us, *m.* (*impĕto*, to assail), an attack, assault, onset.

Importo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*in & porto*), to import, introduce, carry in.

Impŏbus, a, um, *adj.* (*in & probus*, good), wicked, dishonest, depraved, infamous.

Improviso, *adv.*, unexpectedly, suddenly.

Improvīsus, a, um, *adj.* (*in & provisus*), unforeseen, unlooked for.

Impūnè, *adv.* (*impūnis*, unpunished), without punishment; with impunity.

Impunĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*impūnis*, unpunished), impunity, security.

Imus. See *Inferus.*

In, *prep.* I. *With the accusative*, into; against; in. II. *With the ablative*, in; in time of; upon, on; within.

Incendo, ĕre, di, sum, *a.* (*in & candeo*, to glow), to kindle, set fire to, burn.

Incĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, cāsum, *n.* (*in & cado*), to fall upon; to happen, occur.

Incĭdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum, *a.* (*in & cædo*), to cut, cut into.

Incĭpio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, *a.* (*in & capio*), to commence, begin.

Incĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. freq.* (*incieo*, to excite), to incite, hasten *or* put forward, urge forward.

Incŏlo, ĕre, colui, *a. & n.* (*in & colo*), to inhabit.

Incommŏdum, i, *n.* (*in & commŏdum*), inconvenience, damage, disaster.

Incredibĭlis, e, *adj.* (*in & credibilis*, credible), not to be believed, incredible, improbable.

Inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place.

Indicium, i, *n.* (*index*), a discovery, evidence, information, testimony.

Indūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*in & duco*), to lead *or* bring in, introduce.

Induo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.*, to put on, clothe.

Inferior. See *Inferus.*

Infĕro, ferre, intŭli, illātum, *a. irr.* (*in & fero*), to bring *or* carry into, introduce; to advance against.

Infĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, below, beneath, *comp.* **inferior**, lower; inferior; *sup.* **infĭmus**, *or* **imus**, lowest; last.

Infestus, a, um, *adj.*, hostile to; spiteful, malicious.

Infinītus, a, um, *adj.* (*in & finitus*, terminated), infinite, endless.

Inflecto, ĕre, xi, xum, *a.* (*in & flecto*), to bend, crook, curve, bow.

Influo, ĕre, xi, xum, *n.* (*in & fluo*), to flow *or* run into, discharge.

Inimīcus, a, um, *adj.* (*in & amicus*), at enmity with, hostile, unfriendly.

Inimīcus, i, *m.*, an enemy.

Initium, i, *n.* (*ineo*), a commencement, beginning.

Injuria, æ, *f.* (*injurius*, unjust), injury, wrong, injustice; damage.
Injussu, *abl.* (*in & jussu*), without orders, without leave.
Inopia, æ, *f.* (*inops*, helpless), want, need, poverty; scarcity.
Inopīnans, tis, *adj.* (*in & opinans*, thinking), not expecting, unawares.
Inquam, *def. verb*, to say.
Insciens, tis, *adj.* (*in & sciens*, knowing), not knowing, ignorant.
Insĕquor, i, cūtus sum, *dep.* (*in & sequor*), to follow close after, pursue; harass, to press upon.
Insidiæ, ārum, *f.* (*insideo*), an ambush, ambuscade, snares, treachery.
Insigne, is, *n.*, a badge, mark of distinction; *pl.*, badges of office, insignia.
Insignis, e, *adj.* (*in & signum*), distinguished by some mark, marked; famous, eminent.
Insolenter, *adv.* (*insŏlens*, unusual), contrary to custom; immoderately; insolently, arrogantly.
Instĭtuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.* (*in & statuo*), to place, appoint; to establish, introduce; to teach, instruct.
Institūtum, i, *n.* (*instituo*), a regulation, custom, institution.
Insto, āre, Iti. *n.* (*in & sto*), to stand in, over *or* upon; to be near, threaten; to press upon, assail.
Instruo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*in & struo*, to pile up), to construct; to set in order, dispose, marshal, draw up in battle array.
Insŭla, æ, *f.*, an island.
Intellĭgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*inter & lego*), to understand, comprehend, know, perceive.
Inter, *prep. with acc.*, between; among. *Inter se*, mutually, with one another.
Intercēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, *n.* (*inter & cedo*), to come between, intervene; to interfere, interpose.
Intercludo, ĕre, si, sum, *a.* (*inter & claudo*), to shut *or* block up, prevent, hinder.
Interdiu, *adv.* (*inter & diu*), in the day time.
Interdum, *adv.* (*inter & dum*), sometimes, occasionally; meanwhile.
Interea, *adv.* (*inter & ea*), in the mean time, meanwhile.
Interior, ōris, *adj.*, more within, interior.
Intermitto, ĕre, īsi, issum, *a.* (*inter & mitto*), to leave off, discontinue; to cease.
Internecio, ōnis, *f.* (*internĕco*, to kill), a massacre, general slaughter.
Interpres, ĕtis, *m. & f.*, an intermediate agent; a translator, interpreter.
Intersum, esse, fui, *n. irr.* (*inter & sum*), to be in the midst; to differ; to be present; to engage. **Interest**, *imp.*, it concerns *or* imports.
Intervallum, i, *n.* (*inter & vallum*), a space, interval, distance.
Invītus, a, um, *adj.*, unwilling, reluctant, against one's will.
Ipse, a, um, *dem. pro.*, self; himself; *or* he, I, thou.
Ira, æ, *f.*, anger, displeasure.
Is, ea, id, *dem. pro.*, that *or* this; he.
Iste, a, ud, *dem. pro.*, this, such, that, he.
Ita, *adv.*, so, thus; in this manner.
Italia, æ, *f.*, Italy. *It sometimes includes Gallia Cisalpina.*
Ităque, *illative conj.* (*ita & que*), therefore; and so, and thus.
Item, *adv.*, also, likewise.
Iter, itinĕris, *n.*, a going along, journey, way, march, route, path.

J.

Jaceo, ēre, ui, cĭtum, *n.*, to lie down, recline; to lie prostrate.

Jacio, ĕre, jeci, jactum, *a.*, to throw, cast, fling, hurl.

Jacto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. freq.* (*jacio*), to throw, cast; to utter, speak.

Jam, *adv.*, now; already.

Jubeo, ēre, jussi, jussum, *a.*, to order, bid, command, charge, enjoin.

Judĭcium, i, *n.* (*judex*, a judge), judgment, a trial, decision; a court.

Judĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*jus & dico*), to judge, determine, decide; suppose, pronounce.

Jugum, i, *n.*, a yoke; the summit *or* top *of a mountain, etc.*; the ridge.

Jumentum, i, *n.* (*juvo*), a beast of burden, pack-horse.

Jungo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.*, to join, couple; to unite.

Jura, æ, *m.*, Jura, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone.

Jus, juris, *n.*, right, law; authority.

Jusjurandum, i, *n.* (*jus & jurandum*, an oath), an oath.

Jussu, *abl.* (*jubeo*), by command *or* order.

Justitia, æ, *f.*, justice; uprightness.

Justus, a, um, *adj.* (*jus*), just, upright; proper, sufficient.

Juvo, āre, juvi, jutum, *a.*, to help, aid, assist, profit, benefit.

K.

Kalendæ. See *Calendæ*.

L.

L, an abbreviation of the *prænomen* Lucius. *In Roman notation*, fifty.

Labiēnus, i, *m.* (*Titus*), Labienus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic war.

Labor, i, lapsus sum, *dep.*, to glide down, descend, fall.

Labor, ōris, *m.*, labor, toil, fatigue; trouble, misfortune.

Lac, tis, *n.*, milk.

Lacesso, ĕre, īvi, ītum, *a.* (*lacio, obs.*), to provoke, challenge; to attack, assail.

Lacrĭma, *and* **Lacryma, æ,** *f.*, a tear.

Lacrĭmans, tis, *part.*, weeping, lamenting.

Lacus, us, *m.*, a lake.

Lapis, ĭdis, *m.*, a stone.

Largior, īri, ītus sum, *dep.* (*largus*, large), to give in abundance; to give largesses; to bribe, make presents.

Largĭter, *adv.* (*largus*, large), largely, in abundance, plentifully.

Largitio, ōnis, *f.* (*largior*), a giving freely; liberality; bribery.

Latè, *adv.* (*latus*), widely, extensively.

Latitūdo, ĭnis, *f.* (*latus*), breadth, width.

Latobrĭgi, ōrum, *m.*, the Latobrigi, a people bordering upon the Helvetii.

Latro, ōnis, *m.*, a life-guard; highwayman, robber.

Latus, a, um, *adj.*, broad, wide, ample, extensive.

Latus, ĕris, *n.*, the side flank; the flank *or* side of an army.

Laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*laus*), to praise, commend, extol.

Laus, dis, *f.*, praise, glory, honor, fame, renown.

Legatio, ōnis, *f.* (*lego, āre*, to send as an ambassador), an embassy.

Legātus, i, *m.* (*lego, āre*), an ambassador, envoy; a lieutenant,

Legio, ōnis, *f.* (*lego, ĕre*, to collect), a legion, body of soldiers consisting of ten cohorts.

Lemannus, i, *m.*, or **Lemannus lacus,** the Lake of Geneva.

Lenĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*lenis*), softness, smoothness, mildness, gentleness.
Leviter, *adv.*, lightly; in a trifling manner; *from*
Levis, e, *adj.*, light; trifling; false, worthless.
Levo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*levis*), to lift up; to encourage; to relieve; to free.
Lex, legis, *f.*, law; a law, statute, ordinance.
Liber, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, free, unrestrained.
Liber, bri, *m.*, a book.
Liberalĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*liberālis*, liberal), bounty, munificence, generosity.
Libĕrè, *adv.* (*liber*), ingenuously, liberally; freely; copiously.
Libĕri, ōrum, *m.* (*liber*), children (*free born, not slaves*).
Libertas, ātis, *f.* (*liber*), freedom; liberty.
Liceor, ēri, licĭtus sum, *dep.*, to offer a price for, bid.
Licet, *imp.*, it is lawful; it is permitted *or* allowed.
Lingŏnes, um, *m.*, the Lingones, a people of Belgic Gaul.
Lingua, æ, *f.*, the tongue; language, speech.
Linter, tris, *f.*, a boat, canoe.
Liscus, i, *m.*, Liscus, the chief magistrate of the Ædui.
Littĕra, *or* **Litĕra**, æ, *f.*, a letter (of the alphabet), *pl.* letters; an epistle; documents; learning.
Litus, ŏris, *n.*, the shore, sea-side, strand, coast.
Locus, i, *m. in sing., and in pl.* **loci**, *m., and* **loca**, *n.*, a place, situation, region; opportunity; reason; rank, dignity.
Longe, *adv.* (*longus*), far.
Longitūdo, Inis, *f.* (*longus*), length.
Longus, a, um, *adj.*, long; remote.
Loquor, i, cūtus sum, *a. dep.*, to speak, say, tell, declare, discourse.
Lucius, i, *m.*, Lucius, a Roman *prænomen*.
Luscinia, æ, *f.*, a nightingale.
Lux, cis, *f.*, light, day-light, day.

M.

M., an abbreviation of the *prænomen* Marcus.
Magis, maximè, *adv.*, more, rather.
Magistrātus, us, *m.* (*magistro*, to rule), a magistrate; a magistracy.
Magnopĕre, *or* **magno opĕre**, *adv.*, very much, greatly, exceedingly.
Magnus, a, um, *comp.* **major**, *sup.* **maxĭmus**, *adv.*, great, large; powerful.
Major, us, (*comp. of magnus*), greater; more, etc.
Majŏres, um, *m. pl.* (*major*), forefathers, ancestors.
Male, *adv.* (*malus*, bad), badly, ill.
Maleficium, i, *n.* (*maleficus*, hurtful), a bad action; hurt, wrong.
Malo, malle, malui, *irr. n. & a.* (*magis & volo*), prefer.
Malum, i, *n.*, an evil, mischief, misfortune.
Mandātum, i, *n.* (*mando*), a commission, order, command.
Mando, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to commit to one's charge, bid, enjoin, order, command. *Mandare se fugæ*, to betake one's self to flight.
Mane, *n. ind.*, the morning.
Maneo, ēre, si, sum, *n. & a.*, to stop, stay, abide, remain, wait.
Manus, us, *f.*, a hand; art, skill; a band, army.
Marcus, i, *m.*, a Roman *prænomen*.
Mare, is, *n.*, the sea.
Mater, tris, *f.*, a mother.
Matrimonium, i, *n.* (*mater*), marriage, matrimony.
Matrŏna, æ, *f.*, the Marne, a river of France, which unites with the Seine a little above Paris.

Matūro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.*, *to* ripen; hasten.

Matūrus, a, um, *adj.*, ripe, mature; opportune; speedy.

Maxĭme, *adv.* (*sup. of magis*), very greatly, most, for the most part, especially.

Maxĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of magnus*), greatest, chief, highest.

Medius, a, um, *adj.*, middle, in the middle *or* midst.

Memor, ŏris, *adj.*, mindful, remembering.

Memoria, æ, *f.* (*memor*), memory, remembrance, recollection.

Mens, tis, *f.*, the mind, understanding, intellect.

Mensis, is, *m.*, a month.

Mercātor, ōris, *m.* (*mercor*, to trade), a merchant; a trader.

Merces, ēdis, *f.* (*mereo*), hire, wages, pay.

Mereo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a. & n.*, *and* **Mereor, ēri, ĭtus sum,** *dep.*, to deserve, merit.

Merĭtum, i, *n.* (*mereo*), merit, desert.

Messāla, æ, *m.*, Messala, a Roman family name.

Metior, īri, mensus sum, *dep.*, to mete, measure; distribute.

Metus, us, *m.*, fear, dread; care, concern, apprehension.

Meus, a, um, *adj. pro.* (*from mei, gen. of ego*), mine, my, my own.

Miles, ĭtis, *m. & f.* (*mille*), a soldier.

Militāris, e, *adj.* (*miles*), of *or* belonging to a soldier, military.

Mille, *ind. num. adj.*, a thousand. *Also a noun, ind. in sing., in pl.* **millia, ium,** etc.

Minĭme, *adv.* (*sup. of parum*), least; least of all, very little.

Minĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of parvus*), least of all, very small *or* little.

Minor, us, *gen.* **ōris,** *adj.* (*comp. of parvus*), less, smaller.

Minuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.*, to lessen, diminish.

Minùs, *adv.* (*comp. of parum*), less; not.

Miser, a, um, *adj.*, miserable, wretched, unfortunate.

Mittò, ĕre, misi, missum, *a.*, to send, dispatch, depute.

Modo, *adv. & conj.*, just now; lately; only.

Mœnia, ium, *n.*, walls (of a city).

Moneo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a.*, to put in mind, advise, admonish, warn.

Mons, tis, *m.*, a mountain.

Mora, æ, *f.*, a delay; stop, hindrance.

Morior, īri, mortuus sum, *dep.* (*mors*), to die, expire.

Moror, āri, ātus sum, *dep.*, to delay; to remain; to hinder.

Mors, tis, *f.*, death.

Mos, moris, *m.*, a manner, custom, usage, practice.

Moveo, ēre, vi, tum, *a. & n.*, to move; affect, influence.

Mulier, ĕris, *f.*, a woman.

Multitūdo, ĭnis, *f.* (*multus*), a multitude.

Multus, a, um, *adj.* (*comp. n. plus, sup. plurimus*), much, numerous; great. **Multi,** many, many persons. **Multa,** many things.

Mundus, i, *m.*, the universe; the world.

Munio, īre, īvi, *or* **ii, ītum,** *n. & a.*, to inclose with walls, fortify, protect, defend, strengthen.

Munitio, ōnis, *f.* (*munio*), a fortifying.

Murus, i, *m.*, a wall.

N.

Nam, *or* **Namque,** *conj.*, for.

Namēius, i, *m.*, Nameius, a chief of the Helvetii.

Nanciscor, i, nactus, *dep.*, to meet with, find; to gain, obtain.

Nascor, i, natus sum, *dep.*, to be born, spring, arise, grow.

Natu, *m. abl.* (*nascor*), by birth, in age.

Natūra, æ, *f.* (*nascor*), nature; character; disposition.

Navis, is, *f.*, a ship, boat.

Ne, *adv. & conj.*, not, that not, in order not, lest.

Nec, *or* **neque,** *conj. & adv.* (*ne & que*), neither, nor, not; **nec — nec,** neither — nor.

Necessario, *adv.*, necessarily, of necessity.

Necessarius, a, um, *adj.*, necessary, needful, urgent. **Necessarius, i,** *m.*, a relation, connection.

Nefas, *n. ind.* (*ne & fas*), an unlawful thing or action; wicked deed.

Nego, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.* (*ne & ago*), deny, refuse.

Nemo, *d.* **Ini,** *m. & f.* (*ne & homo*), no one, nobody.

Neu, *or* **neve,** *conj.*, nor, neither, **neve — neve,** *or* **neu — neu,** neither — nor.

Nihil, *n. ind.* (the same as *nihilum*), nothing.

Nihĭlum, i, *n.* (*ne & hilum*, the least), nought. **Nihilo,** in nothing. *Nihilo minus or secius*, no less, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

Nil (contracted from *nihil*), nothing.

Nimis, *adv.*, too much.

Nisi, *conj.* (*ne & si*), if not, unless, except.

Nitor, i, nisus, *and* **nixus sum,** *dep.*, to strive; depend upon, trust to.

Nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

Nobĭlis, e, *adj.* (*nosco*), known, noted, famous, illustrious, celebrated, noble.

Nobilĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*nobilis*), renown; high birth, nobility; the nobles.

Nŏceo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *n.*, to hurt, injure, harm.

Noctu, *f. abl.* (*nox*), by night, in the night-time.

Nolo, nolle, nolui, *irr.* (*non & volo*), to be unwilling.

Nomen, ĭnis, *n.* (*nosco*), a name, appellation.

Nominātim, *adv.* (*nomen*), by name, particularly.

Non, *adv.*, not, no.

Nonaginta, *ind. num. adj.* (*novem*), ninety.

Nondum, *adv.* (*non & dum*), not yet.

Nonnullus, a, um, *adj.* (*non & nullus*), some.

Nonnunquam, *adv.* (*non & nonquam*), sometimes.

Norēia, æ, *f.*, Noreia, the principal city of the Norici, a people of Germany.

Norĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to Noricum, Noric.

Nosco, ĕre, novi, notum, *a.*, to know, learn.

Noster, tra, trum, *adj. pro.* (*nos*), our, ours, our own.

Novem, *num. adj. ind.*, nine.

Novus, a, um, *adj.*, new. *Res novæ*, innovations *or* changes in the state of affairs, a revolution.

Nox, ctis, *f.*, night, night-time.

Nubo, ĕre, nupsi, nuptum, *a. & n.*, to cover, veil; to marry.

Nudus, a, um, *adj.*, naked, unprotected.

Nullus, a, um, *adj.* (*ne & ullus*), not any, none, no one.

Num, *adv.*, *in* direct *questions it is not translated*, *in* indirect *questions it signifies* whether.

Numĕrus, i, *m.*, a number.

Nunc, *adv.* (*for novinc, from novus*), now, at present.

Nuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*nuntius*), to announce, report; inform.

Nuntius, i, *m.*, a messenger; news; a message.

Nuper, *adv.* (*for noviper, from novus*), not long ago, lately, recently.

O.

Ob, *prep. with acc.*, for, on account of.

Obærātus, a, um, *adj.* (*ob & æs*), involved in debt; *subs.*, a debtor.

Obĭĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*ob & jacio*), to throw *or* put before, hold out, offer, risk; to oppose.

Obliviscor, i, **oblītus sum**, *dep.*, to forget.

Obsĕcro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.* (*ob & sacro*, to consecrate), to entreat, beseech, implore.

Obses, ĭdis, *m. & f.* (*ob & sedeo*), a hostage.

Obstringo, ĕre, nxi, ictum, *a.* (*ob & stringo*, to draw tight), to bind; put under obligation.

Obtĭneo, ēre, ui, entum, *a. & n.* (*ob & teneo*), to hold; maintain, defend; to preserve; to acquire, accomplish.

Occāsus, us, *m.* (*occido*), a fall, ruin; the setting (of the heavenly bodies).

Occīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, *a.* (*ob & cædo*), to beat, strike; to kill, slay.

Occĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, cāsum, *n.* (*ob & cado*), to fall, fall down; to die, perish.

Occulto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. freq.* (*occĭlo*), to hide, cover, conceal.

Occūpo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*ob & capio*), to lay hands on, invade; to seize; take possession of.

Oceānus, i, *m.*, the ocean; *in Cæsar*, the Atlantic Ocean.

Ocĕlum, i, *n.*, Ocelum, a town in the Alps on the frontiers of Gallia Cisalpina.

Octingenti, æ, a, *num. adj.* (*octo & centum*), eight hundred.

Octo, *ind. num. adj.*, eight.

Octodĕcim, *ind. num. adj.* (*octo & decem*), eighteen.

Octoginta, *ind. num. adj.* (*octo*), eighty.

Ocŭlus, i, *m.*, the eye; sight.

Odi, *or* **osus sum**, *def.*, I hate, detest, abhor.

Odium, i, *n.*, hatred, hate, grudge, ill-will, malice, animosity, dislike, odium.

Offendo, ĕre, di, sum, *n. & a.*, to hit, strike *or* run against; to offend, displease.

Offensio, ōnis, *f.* (*offendo*), a striking against; hurt, grievance; offense.

Omnīno, *adv.*, wholly, entirely, altogether, utterly; at all.

Omnis, e, *adj.*, all, every, the whole of.

Opĕra, æ, *f.* (*opus*), work, labor.

Opes. See *Ops.*

Oportet, ēre, uit, *imp.*, it is fit *or* proper; it ought; it is necessary *or* requisite.

Oppĭdum, i, *n.*, a walled town.

Opprĭmo, ĕre, essi, essum, *a.* (*ob & premo*), to press, press *or* bear down, oppress; to cover; to surprise; to overpower, crush, subdue.

Oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*ob & pugno*), to fight against, assail, attack, assault, storm.

Ops, opis, *f.*, strength, power; *pl.* riches, wealth, resources.

Optĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of bonus*).

Opus, ĕris, *n.*, a work, labor, task; military works, fortifications.

Opus, *ind. subs. & adj.*, need, occasion, necessity; *adj.*, necessary.

Oratio, ōnis, *f.* (*oro*), speech, discourse.

Orgetŏrix, ĭgis, *m.*, Orgetorix, a Hel-

vetian of noble birth and of great wealth.

Orior, īri, ortus sum, *dep.*, to rise, arise, grow up, begin, appear.

Oro, āre, āvi, ātum, *n. & a.*, to speak, utter; entreat.

Ortus, us, *m.* (*orior*), a rising; a beginning, origin.

Os, oris, *n.*, the mouth; the face, countenance.

Ostendo, ĕre, di, sum, *and* **tum,** *a.* (*ob & tendo*), to show, expose, represent, declare, manifest.

Otium, i, *n.*, ease, leisure, recreation, idleness; quiet, repose.

P.

P., an abbreviation of the *prænomen* Publius.

Pabulatio, ōnis, *f.* (*pabulor*), foraging.

Pabŭlum, i, *n.* (*pasco*), food for cattle, fodder.

Paco, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*pax*), to bring into a state of peace, tranquillize; to subdue.

Pæne, *or* **Pene,** *adv.*, almost, nearly.

Pagus, i, *m.*, a canton, district.

Palus, ūdis, *f.*, a marsh, swamp.

Pando, ĕre — pansum, *and* **passum,** *a.*, to open; to spread out.

Par, paris, *adj.*, equal, like, similar.

Parātus, a, um, *adj.* (*paro*), prepared, ready.

Parens, tis, *m. & f.* (*pario*), a parent.

Pareo, ēre, ui, *n.*, to appear; to obey.

Pario, ĕre, pepĕri, parĭtum, *and* **partum,** *a.*, to bear *or* bring forth young; to produce.

Paro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to make *or* get ready, provide, prepare.

Pars, tis, *f.*, a part, port, division; a region; direction.

Parum, *adv.* (*comp. minus, sup. minime*), a little, too little.

Parvŭlus, a, um, *adj. dim.*, very small.

Parvus, a, um, *adj.* (*comp. minor, sup. minimus*), little, small.

Passus, us, *m.* (*pando*), a pace, a step; a measure consisting of five Roman feet. *Mille passus*, a mile.

Patens, *adj.* (*pateo*), open, exposed.

Pateo, ēre, ui, *n.*, to be open; to extend, stretch; to be clear, plain, evident.

Pater, tris, *m.*, a father, sire.

Patior, i, passus sum, *dep.*, to bear, suffer, endure, allow.

Pauci, æ, a, *adj. pl.*, few.

Pax, pacis, *f.*, peace, quiet, tranquillity.

Pecco, āre, āvi, ātum, *n. & a.*, to do wrong, err, trangress, injure, offend, sin.

Pedes, ĭtis, *m.* (*pes*), on foot; a foot soldier.

Pejor, jus, *adj.* (*comp. of malus*).

Pellis, is, *f.*, the skin, hide. *Sub pellibus*, in tents.

Pello, ĕre, pepŭli, pulsum, *a.*, to drive, rout.

Pendo, ĕre, pependi, pensum, *a.*, to weigh, ponder, deliberate; to esteem, value; to pay.

Per, *prep. with acc.*, through.

Perdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *a.* (*per & do*), to destroy, ruin, lose.

Perdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*per & duco*), to bring through, conduct, lead; persuade.

Perfacĭlis, e, *adj.* (*per* intensive *& facilis*), very easy.

Perfĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *irr. a.* (*per & fero*), to bear *or* carry through; to support, suffer, endure; announce, report.

Perfĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*per & facio*), to finish, complete, accomplish, effect.

Perfringo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *a.* (*per*

& *frango*), to break through, break in pieces; to surmount, overcome.

Perfŭga, æ, *m.*, a runaway, fugitive; a deserter: *from*

Perfŭgio, ĕre, ŭgi, ugĭtum, *n.* (*per & fugio*), to fly *or* flee; to desert.

Periculum, i, *n.*, a trial, experiment; danger, hazard.

Perĭtus, a, um, *adj.*, skillful, well skilled, expert.

Permoveo, ĕre, ōvi, ōtum, *a.* (*per & moveo*), to move, affect, influence.

Pernicies, ēi, *f.* (*perněco*, to kill), destruction, ruin; a disaster.

Perpauci, æ, a, *adj.* (*per & pauci*), very few, a very few.

Perpetuus, a, um, *adj.*, perpetual.

Perrumpo, ĕre, ūpi, uptum, *a. & n.* (*per & rumpo*, to break), to break through, enter forcibly.

Persĕquor, i, cūtus sum, *dep.* (*per & sequor*), to follow; to pursue, press upon.

Persevēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *n. & a.* (*per & sevērus*, severe), to persist, continue.

Persolvo, ĕre, solvi, solūtum, *a. & n.* (*per & solvo*), to pay. *Persolvere pœnas*, to suffer punishment.

Persuadeo, ēre, si, sum, *a.* (*per & suadeo*, to advise), to persuade, advise.

Perterreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a.* (*per & terreo*), to frighten greatly, terrify.

Pertineo, ēre, nui, *n.* (*pĕr & teneo*), to reach, extend, stretch; to relate to, concern.

Pervĕnio, īre, ēni, ntum, *n.* (*per & venio*), arrive at, reach.

Pes, pedis, *m.*, a foot.

Pessimus, a, um, *adj.*, *super.* of *malus*, worst, very bad.

Peto, ĕre, īvi, *or* **ii, ītum,** *a.*, to ask, seek, request, desire, petition.

Phalanx, gis, *f.*, a phalanx; a squadrón, troop.

Piĕtas, ātis, *f.* (*pius*, dutiful), piety, devotion; respect.

Piscis, is, *m.*, a fish.

Piso, ōnis, *m.*, Piso, a Roman family name.

Placeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *n.*, to please, delight.

Planities, ēi, *f.*, a plain.

Plebes, ēi, *or* **Plebs, plebis,** *f.*, the common people.

Plenus, a, um, *adj.*, full, replete.

Plurĭmum, *adv.* (*sup. of multum*), most of all, very much, exceedingly.

Plus, *adv.* (*comp. of multum*).

Plus, pluris, *adj.* (*comp. of multus*), *pl. plures, plura*, more, several, many.

Pœna, æ, *f.*, satisfaction, punishment, a penalty.

Pœnĭteo, ēre, ui, *n. & a.* (*pœna*), to repent, be sorry. *Pœnitet me, etc.*, it repents me, etc., I repent, regret, am sorry.

Pollex, ĭcis, *m.*, the thumb.

Polliceor, ēri, ĭtus sum, *dep.* (*pote & liceor*), to offer; to promise.

Pono, ĕre, posui, posĭtum, *a.*, to put, place; to post, station.

Pons, tis, *m.*, a bridge.

Populatio, ōnis, *f.*, a laying waste, ravaging, spoiling, pillaging.

Popŭlor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.*, to ravage, lay waste, destroy, pillage.

Popŭlus, i, *m.*, a people, state, nation.

Porto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to carry, bear, convey.

Portorium, i, *n.* (*porto*), customs, imposts.

Posco, ĕre, poposci, *a.*, to ask, call for, demand, require.

Posĭtus, a, um, *adj.* (*pono*), disposed; situated.

Possessio, ōnis, *f.*, a possession; an estate.

Possum, posse, potui, *irr. n.* (*potis & sum*), to be able, have power; I can.

Post, *prep. with acc., & adv.*, after; since; afterwards.

Postea, *adv.* (*post & ea, acc. pl. of is*), afterward; subsequently.

Postĕrus, a, um, *adj.* (*post*), coming after, following, next, ensuing. **Posteri**, ōrum, *m.*, posterity.

Postquam, *or* **Post quam**, *conj.*, after, after that.

Postridie, *adv.* (*posterus & dies*), the day after, the day following.

Posui. See *Pono*.

Potens, tis (ior, issĭmus), *adj.* (*possum*), able, capable, strong; powerful, influential.

Potentia, æ, *f.* (*potens*), power, force, authority, influence.

Potestas, ātis, *f.* (*possum*), ability, power, opportunity; authority.

Potior, īri, ītus sum, *dep.* (*potis*, able), acquire, gain possession of, capture.

Præ, *prep. with abl.*, before; in comparison with.

Præbeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a.*, to give, supply, furnish, provide.

Præcăveo, ēre, căvi, autum, *a. & n.* (*præ & caveo*), to provide *or* guard against.

Præcēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, *a. & n.* (*præ & cedo*), to go before, surpass, excel.

Præceptum, i, *n.* (*præcipio*), an order; a precept, instruction; a command, injunction.

Præcĭpio, ĕre, ĕpi, eptum, *a.* (*præ & capio*), anticipate, prevent, charge, enjoin.

Præfĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *irr. a.* (*præ & fero*), to prefer, choose rather.

Præfĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*præ & facio*), set over, put in authority.

Præmitto, ĕre, ĭsi, issum, *a.* (*præ & mitto*), to send *or* dispatch before.

Præopto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*præ & opto*, to wish), to wish rather, choose, prefer.

Præsens, tis, *adj.* (*præ & ens*), present.

Præsertim, *adv.* (*præ & sero*), especially, chiefly.

Præsidium, i, *n.* (*præses*, a protector), a guard, garrison; aid, protection.

Præsto, āre, ĭti, ĭtum, *and* ātum, *a. & n.* (*præ & sto*), to stand before; excel, surpass; furnish; to keep.

Præsum, esse, fui, *irr. n.* (*præ & sum*), to preside over, have the charge of; to hold.

Præter, *prep. with acc. & adv.*, before; besides, except.

Præterea, *adv.* (*præter & ea*), besides, moreover.

Prætereo, īre, ii, ĭtum, *irr. n.* (*præter & eo*), to go *or* pass by.

Prætermĭtus, a, um, *adj.* (*prætereo*), past, gone by. **Præterita**, ōrum, *n.*, things past; the past.

Præterquam, *or* **Præter quam**, *adv.*, except, beside.

Prætor, ōris, *m.* (*for præitor, from præeo*), prætor.

Pravus, a, um, *adj.*, crooked; bad, wicked, depraved.

Prehendo, *or* **Prendo**, ĕre, di, sum, *n.*, to take hold of, catch, seize, grasp.

Premo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *a.*, to press; to oppress; to constrain, compel, force.

Prendo. See *Prehendo*.

Pretium, i, *n.*, a price.

Prex, *dat.* **preci**, a prayer, supplication, entreaty.

Pridie, *adv.*, on the day before.

Primo, *adv.* (*primus*), at first.

Primum, *adv.*, first. *Quam primum*, as soon as possible.

Primus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of prior*), first.

Princeps, ĭpis, *adj., m. & f.* (*primus & capio*), first, distinguished. *Subs.*, chief, first in rank.

Principātus, us, *m.* (*princeps*), the first *or* chief place, preëminence, supremacy.

Prior, us, *gen.* **ōris,** *adj.*, former.

Pristīnus, a, um, *adj.*, former, accustomed.

Prius, *adv.* (*prior*), at first, before.

Priusquam, *adv.*, before that, before.

Privātim, *adv.*, in private; individuals.

Privātus, a, um, *adj.* (*privo*, to deprive), private, personal. *Subs.*, a private person.

Pro, *prep. with abl.*, before; for, instead of; in consideration of.

Probo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*probus*, good), to approve, commend; to prove, demonstrate.

Procillus, i, *m.*, Procillus, a Roman family name.

Procul, *adv.*, far, far off.

Prodo, ĕre, ĭdi, ĭtum, *a.* (*pro & do*), to declare; transmit, hand down; to betray, give up, abandon, deceive.

Proelium, i, *n.*, a battle, engagement, combat.

Profectio, ōnis, *f.* (*proficiscor*), a setting out, departure, journey.

Proficio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*pro & facio*), to profit; to advance.

Proficiscor, i, profectus sum, *n. dep.*, to set out; to march, journey, proceed.

Prohĭbeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a.* (*pro & habeo*), to keep off, prevent, restrain; to defend, protect.

Projĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*pro & jacio*), to throw away; to throw, cast.

Prope, *prep. with acc. & adv.* (*propius, proxime*), near, beside; almost, nearly.

Propello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *a.* (*pro & pello*), to drive forwards, repel.

Propinquus, a, um, *adj.* (*prope*), neighboring. *Subs.*, a kinsman, relation.

Propius, *adv.* (*comp. of prope*).

Propōno, ĕre, osui, ositum, *a.* (*pro & pono*), to set forth, display; declare, explain.

Propter, *adv. & prep. with acc.* (*prope*), near by, on account of.

Propterea, *adv.* (*propter & ea*), therefore; for this reason. *Propterea quod*, because.

Prosper, a, um, *adj.*, prosperous.

Prospĭcio, ĕre, exi, ectum, *n. & a.* (*pro & specio*, to see), to look forward; to provide for, take care of.

Prosum, prodesse, profui, *irr.* (*pro & sum*), to do good, profit, help.

Provincia, æ, *f.*, a province.

Proxĭme, *adv.* (*sup. of prope*), next; a little before, lately.

Proxĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of propior*), neighboring, nearest, next.

Prudens, *adj.*, prudent.

Puber, ĕris, *adj.*, arrived at the age of puberty, adult. *Subs.*, **Puberes,** persons of mature age, adults.

Publĭce, *adv.* (*publicus*), by public authority; in the name of the state.

Publĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, common, public.

Puer, ĕri, *m.*, a boy. *A pueris*, from boyhood *or* childhood.

Pugna, æ, *f.* (*pugnus*, a fist), a battle, fight.

Pugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.* (*pugna*), to fight, combat.

Pulcher, chra, chrum (**ior, errĭmus**), *adj.*, fair, beautiful.

Punio, īre, īvi, ītum, *a.*, to punish.

Purgo, āre, āvi, atum, *a.*, to make clean; justify, exculpate.

Puto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to prune; to weigh, consider; to think, esteem.

Pyrenæus, a, um, *adj.*, Pyrenean.

Q.

Q., an abbreviation of the *prænomen* Quintus.

Qua, *adv.* (*abl. fem. of qui, sc. via or parte*), where; in what way.

Quadraginta, *num. adj.* (*quatuor*), forty.

Quadringenti, æ, a, *num. adj.* (*quatuor & centum*), four hundred.

Quæro, ĕre, sīvi, sītum, *a.*, to seek, inquire; to investigate.

Qualis, e, *adj.*, of what kind *or* sort, what.

Quam, *conj. & adv.*, how, how much, as much; as, than.

Quantus, a, um, *adj.*, how great, as great, as much — as.

Quare, *conj. & adv.* (*abl. of qui & res*), wherefore, why.

Quartus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the fourth.

Quatuor (Quatt.), *ind. num. adj.*, four.

Quatuordĕcim, *ind. num. adj.* (*quatuor & decem*), fourteen.

Que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

Queror, i, questus sum, *dep.*, to lament, bewail, complain.

Qui, quæ, quod, *pro. rel.*, who which, that, what.

Quidam, quædam, quoddam, *and* **quiddam,** *pron.*, a certain one.

Quidem, *conj.*, indeed, truly. *Ne quidem*, not even.

Quin, *conj.* (*qui & ne*, i. e., *non*), why not? yet, but, nay.

Quindĕcim, *ind. num. adj.* (*quinque & decem*), fifteen.

Quingenti, æ, a, *num. adj.* (*quinque & centum*), five hundred.

Quini, æ, a, *num. adj.* (*quinque*), five each, five.

Quinquaginta, *ind. num. adj.*, fifty.

Quinque, *ind. num. adj.*, five.

Quintus, a, um, *num. adj.* (*quinque*), the fifth.

Quintus, i, *m.*, Quintus, a Roman *prænomen*.

Quis, *or* **qui, quæ, quod,** *or* **quid,** *interrogative and indefinite pro.*, who? which? what? any one, any; some.

Quisquam, quæquam, quidquam, *or* **quicquam,** *pro.* (*quis & quam*), any.

Quisque, quæque, quodque, *and* **quidque,** *gen.* **cujusque,** *pro.* (*quis & que*), every man, etc., each, all.

Quo, *adv. & conj.* (*qui*), whither, where; because; that, in order that.

Quo minus, that not, lest.

Quod, *conj.* (*qui*), that, why; because.

Quoque, *conj.*, also; likewise.

Quotidiānus a, um, *adj.* (*quotidie*), daily; common, usual.

Quotidie, *adv.* (*quod & dies*), daily, day by day.

Quum, *and* **Cum,** *adv. & conj.*, when, while, since, although.

R.

Rapīna, æ, *f.* (*rapio*, to carry off), robbery, pillage.

Ratio, ōnis, *f.* (*reor*), reason; a design, plan; an account, calculation; business, affair.

Ratis, is, *f.*, raft.

Rauraci, ōrum, *m.*, the Rauraci, a people of Gaul, on the northern extremity of Mt. Jura.

Recens, tis, *adj.*, new, fresh, recent.

Recĭpio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, *a.* (*re & capio*), to take again, receive; to retreat, withdraw; to recover.

Rectus, a, um, *adj.* (*rego*), right, straight, direct.

Reddo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *a.* (*re & do*), to give back, restore; to pay, recompense.

Redeo, īre, ii, *irr. n.* (*re & eo*), to return, come back.

Redĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *a.* (*re & emo*), to buy back; to acquire, purchase.

Redintĕgro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*re & integro*, to renew), to renew.
Reditio, ōnis, *f.* (*redeo*), a return.
Reditus, us, *m.* (*redeo*), a return.
Redūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*re & duco*), to bring *or* lead back.
Refĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *irr. a.* (*re & fero*), to bring back, restore; relate. *Referre pedem*, to retreat.
Regnum, i, *n.* (*rex*), a kingdom; dominion, sovereignty; a realm.
Rego, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.*, to govern, rule.
Rejĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, *a.* (*re & jacio*), to cast back, repel; reject, refuse.
Religio, ōnis, *f.* (*relĕgo*, to consider minutely), religion, devotion, piety.
Relinquo, ĕre, liqui, lictum, *a.* (*re & linquo*, to leave), to leave behind; to forsake, abandon.
Relĭquus, a, um, *adj.* (*relinquo*), remaining; the rest; the other.
Reminiscor, i, *dep.*, to remember, call to mind, recollect.
Removeo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum, *a.* (*re & moveo*), to remove, withdraw.
Renuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*re & nuntio*), to bring word; to report, announce.
Repello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, *a.* (*re & pello*), to drive back, repel.
Repentīnus, a, um, *adj.* (*repens*, sudden), unlooked for, unexpected, sudden.
Repĕrio, īre, pĕri, pertum, *a.*, to find, discover.
Repĕto, ĕre, īvi, *or* **ii, ītum,** *a.* (*re & peto*), to ask *or* demand again; to demand back, claim.
Reprehendo, ĕre, di, sum, *a.* (*re & prehendo*), to reprove, blame, censure.
Repugno, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.* (*re & pugno*), to resist, oppose.
Res, rei, *f.*, a thing, affair; fact, circumstance.
Rescindo, ĕre, ĭdi, issum, *a.* (*re & scindo*), to cut down, destroy.
Rescisco, ĕre, īvi, ītum, *a.* (*re & scisco*, to inquire), to come to know, ascertain, find out.
Resisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, *n.* (*re & sisto*), to withstand, resist, oppose.
Respondeo, ēre, di, sum, *a.* (*re & spondeo*, to promise), to answer, reply.
Responsum, i, *n.* (*respondeo*), an answer, reply.
Respublica, æ, *f.* (*res & publicus*), the commonwealth, state, republic; politics, public affairs.
Restituo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.* (*re & statuo*), to replace; to reinstate, restore.
Retĭneo, ēre, tinui, tentum, *a.* (*re & teneo*), to hold *or* keep back, detain; to check.
Reverto, ĕre, ti, sum, *a.*, *and* **Revertor, i, sus sum,** *dep.* (*re & verto*), to turn back *or* over; to come back, return.
Rex, regis, *m.* (*rego*), a king.
Rhenus, i, *m.*, the Rhine, a river of Germany.
Rhodănus, i, *m.*, the Rhone, a river of Gaul.
Ripa, æ, *f.*, the bank of a river.
Rogo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.*, to ask, request, demand, question.
Roma, æ, *f.*, Rome.
Romānus, a, um, *adj.* (*Roma*), Roman. **Romanus, i,** *m.*, a Roman.
Rota, æ, *f.*, a wheel.
Rursus, *adj.*, backward; again.

S.

Sæpe, *adv.*, often, frequently. **Sæpenumero,** frequently.
Sanguis, ĭnis, *m.*, blood.

Santŏnes, um, *and* **Santŏni, ōrum,** the Santones, a people of Gallia Celtica.

Sanus, a, um, *adj.*, sound; sane, wise, discreet.

Sapiens, tis, *adj.*, wise.

Sapientia, æ, *f.*, wisdom.

Sapio, ĕre, īvi, *or* **ii,** *n.*, to have a taste; to know, be wise.

Sarcĭna, æ, *f.* (*sarcio*), burden; baggage.

Satis, *indecl. adj. & subs. & adv.*, enough, sufficient. *Comp.* **Satior, ius,** better, more advantageous.

Satisfăcio, ĕre, ēci, actum, *a.* (*satis & facio*), to satisfy.

Saxum, i, *n.*, a rock.

Scelus, ĕris, *n.*, wickedness; a crime.

Scio, īre, īvi, ītum, *a.*, to know, understand.

Scribo, ĕre, psi, ptum, *a.*, to write.

Scutum, i, *n.*, a buckler, shield.

Se, etc. See *Sui.*

Secrēto, *adv.* (*secrētus*, separate), separately, apart; secretly.

Secundus, a, um, *adj.* (*sequor*), second; favorable, prosperous.

Sed, *adversative conj.*, but; now.

Sedĕcim, *or* **Sexdĕcim,** *num. adj. indecl.*, sixteen.

Sedes, is, *f.* (*sedeo, to sit*), a seat, abode; residence.

Seditio, ōnis, *f.* (*sedeo,* to sit), dissension; popular commotion; civil discord, sedition.

Seditiōsus, a, um, *adj.* (*seditio*), turbulent, seditious, treasonable.

Segusiāni, ōrum, *m.*, the Segusiani, a people of Gallia Celtica.

Sementis, is, *f.* (*semen,* seed), a sowing.

Senātus, us, *m.* (*senex*), a senate.

Senex, senis, *adj.*, old, aged. *Subs.*, an old man.

Seni, æ, a, *num. adj.* (*sex*), six each, six.

Senŏnes, um, *m.*, the Senones, a people of Gaul.

Sentio, īre, sensi, sensum, *a.*, to discern by the senses, perceive; to think, suppose.

Separātim, *adv.*, separately.

Septem, *ind. num. adj.*, seven.

Septentriōnes, um, *pl. m.*, the seven stars which form the constellation called Arctos, the Bear; the north.

Septĭmus, a, um, *num. adj.* (*septem*), the seventh.

Septingenti, æ, a, *num. adj.* (*septem & centum*), seven hundred.

Septuaginta, *indecl. num. adj.*, seventy.

Sepultūra, æ, *f.* (*sepelio,* to bury), burial, interment.

Sequăna, æ, *m.*, the Seine, a river of France.

Sequăni, ōrum, *m.*, the Sequani, a people of Gaul, inhabiting a country west of Helvetia.

Sequănus, a, um, *adj.*, Sequanian. *Subs.*, a Sequanian.

Sequor, i, secūtus sum, *dep.*, to go *or* come after, follow, pursue.

Sero, *adv.* (*serus*), late, too late.

Servio, īre, īvi, *or* **ii, ītum,** *n.* (*servus*), to serve, obey.

Servo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.*, to save, preserve; keep.

Servus, i, *m.*, a slave.

Seu, *conj.* (*sive*), whether. **Seu — seu,** *or* **sive,** whether — or, either — or.

Sex, *ind. num. adj.*, six.

Sexaginta, *ind. num. adj.* (*sex*), sixty.

Sexcenti, æ, a, *num. adj.* (*sex & centum*), six hundred.

Sexdĕcim, *or* **sedĕcim,** *ind. num. adj.* (*sex & decem*), sixteen.

Si, *conj.*, if; whether.

Sic, *adv.*, so, thus.

Sidus, ĕris, *n.*, a star.

Signum, i, *n.*, a mark, sign; a standard.

Silva, æ, *f.*, a wood, forest.

Similis, e, *adj.*, like, similar.
Simŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*similis*,) to feign, pretend.
Sin, *conj.*, but if.
Sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
Singŭlus, a, um, *num. adj.*, single, separate; one by one.
Sino, ĕre, sivi, situm, *a.*, to permit, suffer, allow.
Sive, *conj.* (*si & ve*), or if, and if. **Sive — sive**, *or* **seu**, either — or, whether — or.
Socer, ĕri, *m.*, a father-in-law.
Socius, a, um, *adj.*, united, associated. *Subs.*, an ally.
Sol, solis, *m.*, the sun.
Soleo, ēre, ĭtus sum, *n.*, to be accustomed *or* wont.
Solum, i, *n.*, the ground; the soil.
Solum, *adv.*, only, alone.
Solus, a, um, *adj.*, alone, only.
Solvo, ere, solvi, solūtum, *a.*, to loose, unbind.
Soror, ŏris, *f.*, a sister.
Sors, tis, *f.* (*sero*), lot, chance, fortune.
Spatium, i, *n.* (*pateo*), raceground; a course; space; interval; time.
Specto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. freq.* (*specio*), to behold; to look; to lie towards; to incline towards; to face.
Spero, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to hope, trust, expect.
Spes, spēi, *f.*, hope, expectation; confidence.
Spons, tis, *f.*, will. *Sponte, mea, etc.*, of my own free will, voluntarily, freely.
Statio, ōnis, *f.* (*sto*), a station, post.
Statuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.*, to set up; to maintain; to resolve, determine; pass sentence.
Stipendiarius, a, um, *adj.*, tributary. *Subs.*, a stipendiary.
Sto, stare, steti, statum, *n.*, to stand; to remain.
Studeo, ēre, ui, *n.*, to study: pursue; to desire, aim.
Studium, i, *n.*, study, attention, diligence; zeal, devotion.
Sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*, under; beneath; towards, near.
Subdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*sub. & duco*), to draw up; remove, withdraw.
Subeo, īre, īvi, *or* ii, ĭtum, *irr. n.* (*sub & eo*), to go under, enter; approach; come, undergo, endure.
Subjĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, *a.* (*sub & jacio*), to throw under; to expose, subject.
Sublĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*sub & levo*), to lift; to help, assist, aid.
Submŏveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum, *a.* (*sub & moveo*), to remove.
Subsisto, ĕre, stiti, *a. & n.* (*sub & sisto*, to stand), to stop; to stand still, halt; resist.
Subsum, esse, fui, *irr. n.* (*sub & sum*), to be under, to be near at hand.
Subvĕho, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*sub & veho*), to carry, convey.
Succēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, *n.* (*sub & cedo*), to go *or* come under; come up, approach, advance; succeed, prosper.
Sui, *pro.*, of himself, themselves. *In the acc. & abl. it is often doubled*, sese.
Sum, esse, fui, *irr. n.*, to be; to exist, remain.
Summa, æ, *f.* (*summus*), the sum *or* aggregate.
Summus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of superus*), highest; greatest, chief; the summit of.
Sumo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum, *a.* (*sub & emo*), to take; to procure; inflict; to undertake.
Sumptus, us, *m.* (*sumo*), expense, cost.
Super, *adv. & prep. with acc.* or *abl.*, above, over.

Superior, ĭus, *adj.* (*comp. of superus*), higher, upper; former.

Supĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.* (*super*), to surpass, excel, overcome; subdue.

Supersum, esse, fui, *n.* (*super & sum*), to remain, be left behind, survive.

Supĕrus, a, um, (*comp. superior, sup. supremus* or *summus*), *adj.* (*super*), above, upper, on high.

Suppĕto, ĕre, īvi, *or* **ii, ĭtum,** *a.* (*sub & peto*), to occur; to be near *or* at hand.

Supplĭcium, i, *n.* (*supplex*), a supplication; a punishment, torture, torment.

Supra, *adv. & prep. with acc.*, above, over, upon.

Suscĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *a.* (*sub & capio*), to take *or* lift up, receive; to undertake, engage in.

Suspĭcio, ĕre, pexi, pectum, *n. & a.* (*sub & specio*, to see), to look up *or* upwards; to suspect.

Suspicio, ōnis, *f.* (*suspicio*), suspicion; ground of suspicion.

Sustĭneo, ēre, tinui, tentum, *a.* (*sub & teneo*), to sustain, support; to withstand.

Suus, a, um, *poss. & reflexive pro.* (*sui*), one's own; his own; his. **Sui,** *pl.*, one's party, friends, soldiers, etc. **Sua,** *n. pl.*, one's property, effects, possessions.

T.

T., an abbreviation of the *prænomen* Titus.

Tabernacŭlum, i, *n.* (*taberna*, a hut), a tent.

Tabŭla, æ, *f.*, a board; a picture; a tablet; record.

Taceo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *n. & a.*, to be silent.

Tam, *adv.*, so, so much.

Tamen, *conj.*, notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet.

Tandem, *adv.* (*tum & demum*), at length, at last, finally.

Tantopĕre, *adv.* (*abl. of tantus & opus*), so much, so greatly.

Tantum, *adv.* (*tantus*), so much; only.

Tantus, a, um, *adj.*, so great, so much.

Telum, i, *n.*, a dart, javelin, spear.

Temperantia, æ, *f.* (*tempero*), moderation, temperance, self control.

Tempĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a. & n.* (*tempus*), to moderate, restrain; to abstain, refrain, forbear.

Tempus, ŏris, *n.*, time; a season; occasion, opportunity.

Tendo, ĕre, tetendi, tensum, *and* **tentum,** *a. & n.*, to stretch, extend.

Teneo, ēre, tenui, tentum, *a. & n.* (*tendo*), to hold; to possess, gain possession of, keep.

Tento, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to examine; to attempt; to attack.

Tenuis, e, *adj.*, thin, slender.

Tergum, i, *n.*, the back, the rear. *A tergo*, from behind.

Terreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *a.*, to frighten, terrify.

Tertius, a, um, *num. adj.* (*ter*), third.

Testis, is, *m. & f.*, a witness.

Tigurīni, ōrum, *m.*, the Tigurini.

Tigurīnus, a, um, *adj.*, **Tigurinus pagus,** one of the four districts into which Helvetia was divided.

Timeo, ēre, ui, *a. & n.*, to fear, apprehend.

Timor, ōris, *m.* (*timeo*), fear, apprehension, dread, anxiety.

Tolĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to bear, endure; alleviate, lighten.

Tollo, ĕre, sustŭli, sublatum, *a.*, to raise up; to take away, remove.

Tolosātes, ĭum, *m.*, the Tolosates, inhabitants of Tolosa.
Tot, *ind. num. adj.*, so many.
Totus, a, um, *adj.*, all, whole, entire.
Trado, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, *a.* (*trans & do*), to deliver; to give up; to surrender.
Tradūco. See *Transduco.*
Tragŭla, æ, *f.*, a sort of javelin.
Traho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *a.*, to draw; delay, prolong.
Trajĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, *a.* (*trans & jacio*), to throw *or* cast over; to pierce.
Trans, *prep. with acc.*, on the farther side of; beyond; over.
Transdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, *a.* (*trans & duco*), to bring *or* carry over, transport.
Transeo, īre, ii, ĭtum, *irr. n & a.* (*trans & eo*), to go over, pass, cross.
Transfĭgo, ĕre, ixi, ixum, *a.* (*trans & figo*, to pierce), to run *or* drive through, transfix, pierce.
Transjĭcio. See *Trajicio.*
Trecenti, æ, a, *num. adj.* (*tres & centum*), three hundred.
Trepĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.* (*trepidus*, fearful), to make haste for fear; to tremble, be alarmed.
Tres, tria, *num. adj.*, three.
Tribuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, *a.*, to give, grant, impart; to allow, concede.
Triduum, i, *n.* (*tres & dies*), three days.
Triplex, ĭcis, *adj.* (*tres & plico*, to fold), triple, threefold.
Tristis, e, *adj.*, sad, sorrowful.
Tu, tui, *subs. pro.*, *m. & f.*, thou, you; *pl. vos*, *vestrum* or *vestri*, you.
Tulingi, ōrum, *m.*, the Tulingi, a people of Gallia Belgica.
Tum, *adv. & conj.*, besides, moreover, next; then.
Tumŭlus, i, *m.* (*tumeo*, to swell), a little hill, hillock.
Tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.
Tuus, a, um, *poss. pro.* (*tu*), thine, yours.

U.

Ubi, *adv. & conj.*, where; when.
Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, *dep.*, to chastise, punish, avenge.
Ullus, a, um, *adj.*, any.
Ulterior, ĭus, ōris, *adj. comp.*, farther.
Ultĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*sup. of ulterior*), farthest, last, most remote.
Ultro, *adv.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily.
Una, *adv.* (*unus*), together, at the same time.
Unde, *adv.*, whence?
Undĕcim, *ind. num. adj.* (*unus & decem*), eleven.
Undecĭmus, a, um, *num. adj.* (*undecim*), the eleventh.
Undequadraginta, *ind. num. adj.* (*unus, de, & quadraginta*), thirty-nine.
Undique, *adv.* (*unde & que*), from all parts, on every side.
Unus, a, um, *num. adj.*, one; alone, only.
Urbs, urbis, *f.*, a city.
Usus, us, *m.* (*utor*), use; exercise, practice, experience.
Ut, *or* **Uti**, *adv. & conj.*, as that, so that; when.
Uter, utra, utrum, *adj.*, which of two.
Uterque, utrăque, utrumque, *adj.* (*uter & que*), both, each.
Uti. See *Ut.*
Utor, i, usus sum, *dep.*, to use, employ; to enjoy.
Uxor, ōris, *f.*, a wife.

V.

Vacco, āre, āvi, ātum, *n.*, to be empty; to be unoccupied.

Vagor, āri, ātus sum, *dep.* (*vagus*, wandering), to wander, rove.
Valeo, ēre, ui, *n.*, to be well; to be powerful; have influence, prevail.
Valerius, i, *m.*, Valerius, the name of a Roman *gens*.
Vallum, i, *n.*, a rampart, entrenchment.
Vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to lay waste, ravage, desolate.
Vectīgal, ālis, *n.*, tax, revenue.
Vel, *conj.*, or; even; **vel — vel,** either — or.
Venio, īre, veni, ventum, *n.*, to come, arrive.
Ventus, i, *m.*, the wind.
Ver, veris, *n.*, the Spring.
Verbigēnus, i, *m.*, Verbigenus, one of the four divisions of Helvetia.
Verbum, i, *n.*, a word, remark.
Vereor, ēri, ĭtus sum, *dep.*, to reverence; to fear, apprehend.
Vergo, ĕre, *a. & n.*, to incline towards; to lie towards.
Vergobrĕtus, i, *m.*, Vergobretus, the title of the chief magistrate of the Ædui.
Vero, *adv. & conj.* (*verus*), certainly, in truth; but.
Verto, ĕre, ti, sum, *a. & n.*, to turn.
Verudoctius, i, *m.*, Verudoctius, a chief of the Helvetii.
Verus, a, um, *adj.*, true, real.
Vespĕrus, *or* **Vesper, ĕri,** *m.*, the evening star; the evening.
Vester, tra, trum, *adj. pro.* (*vos*), your, yours; of you.
Veterānus, a, um, *adj.* (*vetus*), old, veteran.
Veto, āre, ui, ĭtum, *a.*, to forbid, prohibit, dissuade, prevent.
Vetus, ĕris, *adj.*, old, ancient.
Vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to trouble, molest, harass, annoy.
Via, æ, *f.*, a way, road, path.
Vicesĭmus, a, um, *num. adj.* (*viginti*), the twentieth.
Victoria, æ, *f.* (*victor*), victory.
Victus, us, *m.* (*vivo*), provisions.
Vicus, i, *m.*, a village.
Video, ēre, vidi, visum, *a. & n.*, to see, behold, perceive, discern, learn.
Videor, ēri, visus sum, *pass. & dep.* (*video*), to seem, appear.
Vigilia, æ, *f.*, (*vigil*, awake), a watching; a watch, guard; a fourth part of the night. *The watches began at sunset, the night being divided into four equal parts.*
Viginti, *ind. num. adj.*, twenty.
Vinco, ĕre, vici, victum, *a. & n.*, to conquer, vanquish, overcome.
Vincŭlum, i, *n.* (*vincio*, to bind), a bond, band.
Vir, viri, *m.*, a man; a husband; a man of fortitude, brave man.
Vires, ium, *pl. of vis*, force, strength, power, vigor.
Virtus, ūtis, *m.* (*vir*), manhood, bravery, valor, courage; excellence.
Vis, vis, *f.*, force, vigor, strength, might, power.
Vita, æ, *f.*, life.
Vito, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to shun, avoid.
Vivo, ĕre, xi, ctum, *n.*, to live.
Vix, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.
Voco, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.* (*vox*), to call; to name.
Vocontii, ōrum, *m.*, the Vocontii, a people of Gaul.
Volo, velle, volui, *irr. a. & n.*, to will, purpose; to choose, wish, desire; to command.
Voluntas, ātis, *f.* (*volo*), will, inclination, wish, choice; approbation.
Voluptas, ātis, *f.*, pleasure, delight.
Vulgus, i, *n. & m.*, the common people, populace; the multitude.
Vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, *a.*, to wound.
Vulnus, ĕris, *n.*, a wound, hurt.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.

THIS vocabulary is intended only as a reference-key to the preceding, which the student should always consult. Proper names are omitted.

Able, be able, **possum.**
About, **ad.**
Across, **trans.**
Advise, **moneo.**
Affair, **res.**
Aid, **auxilium.**
All, **omnis.**
Allies, **socii.**
Allow, **concēdo.**
Also, **ētiam, quoque.**
Ambassador, **legātus.**
Animal, **animal.**
Announce, **nuntio.**
Annoy, **lacesso.**
Another, **alter, alius.**
Appoint, **dico, constituo.**
Arms, **arma.**
Army, **exercitus.**
Arrange, **instruo.**
Arrival, **adventus.**
Ascent, **ascensus.**
Ask, **rogo.**
Assemble, **convenio.**
At, **ad.**
Attack, **impĕtus.**
Attempt, **conor.**
Avoid, **vito.**

Banks, **ripæ.**
Battle, **prœlium.**
Battle-array, **acies.**
Beautiful, **pulcher.**
Because, **quod.**
Begin, **capio initium, cœpi.**
Beseech, **obsĕcro.**
Best, **optĭmus.** See *bonus.*
Betake, **recipio.**
Better, **melior.** See *bonus.*
Between, **inter.**
Body, **corpus.**
Bold, **audax.**
Book, **liber.**
Boy, **puer.**
Brave, **fortis.**
Bring upon, **infĕro.**
Burn, **incendo.**
By, **a** *or* **ab.**

Call, **voco, appello.**
Camp, **castra.**
Carry on, **gero.**
Check, **prohibeo.**
Chief, **princeps.**
City, **urbs.**
Come, **venio.**
Commander, **imperātor.**
Conference, **colloquium.**
Conquer, **supĕro.**
Conspiracy, **conjuratio.**
Construct, **perdūco.**
Consul, **consul.**
Continually, **continenter.**
Council, **concilium.**
Country, **ager, patria, fines.**

Daughter, **filia.**
Day, **dies.**
Depart, **exeo, abeo.**
Demand, **posco.**
Design, **consilium.**
Differ, **differo.**
Difficult, **difficĭlis.**
Discover, **cognosco.**
Discuss, **jacto.**
Dismiss, **dimitto.**
Distant, **absum.**
Divide, **divĭdo.**
Do; **facio.**
Doubt, **dubĭto.**
Draw up, **instruo.**
Drive, **prohibeo.**

Eagerly, **cupĭde.**
Easily, **facĭle.**
Easy, **facĭlis.**
End, **finis.**
Enemy, **hostis.**
Entertain doubt, **dubĭto.**
Entreat, **oro.**
Even, **etiam.**
Every, **omnis.**
Excel, **præcēdo.**
Exposed, **patens.**
Extend, **pertineo.**

Face, **specto.**
Fall, **accĭdo.**
Famous, **celĕber.**
Far, **longe.**
Farther, **ulterior.**
Few, **pauci.** Very few, **perpauci.**
Five, **quinque.**
Flee, **fugio.**
Flight, **fuga.**
Follow, **insĕquor.**
For, **de.**
Force, **vis.**
Forces, **copiæ.**
Fortune, **fortūna.**
Friend, **amīcus.**
Frighten, **terreo.**

From, **a** *or* **ab, de** *or* **ex.**
From each other, **inter se.**

Give, **do.**
Give orders, **jubeo.**
Go, **eo.**
Go out, **exeo.**
Good, **bonus.**
Govern, **rego.**
Great, **magnus.**
Ground of suspicion, **suspicio,** noun.

Hasten, **contendo.**
Hate, **odi.**
Have, **habeo.**
He, **ille, is.**
Hear, **audio.**
Height, **altitūdo.**
Her, **suus.**
High, **altus.**
Hill, **collis.**
His, **suus.**
Hold, **habeo, obtineo.**
Hope, **spes.**
Horn, **cornu.**
Hostage, **obses.**
Hostile, **inimīcus.**
Hour, **hora.**

I, **ego.**
If, **si.**
In, into, **in.**
Inasmuch as, **quum.**
Indicate, **designo.**
Inform, **certior fio.**
Inhabit, **incŏlo.**
Injury, **injuria.**
Intend to do, periphrastic of **facio.**
Intention (it is my), **sum** with **dat.**

Journey, **iter.**
Justice, **justitia.**

King, **rex.**
Kingdom, **regnum.**
Knee, **genu.**

Language, **lingua.**
Law, **lex.**
Lead, **duco.**
Lead back, **redūco.**
Learn, **cognosco.**
Least, **minĭmus.** See *parvus.*
Legion, **legio.**
Letters, **litĕræ.**
Liberty, **libertas.**
Line of battle, **acies.**
Live, **vivo, inccĭlo.**
Love, **amo.**
Lower, **inferior.**

Make, **facio.**
Make announcement, **nuntio.**
Make laws, **leges instituo.**
Man, **vir, homo.**
Marry, **duco in matrimonium.**
Me, **me.** See *ego.*
Mile, **mille passus.**
Mind, **anĭmus, meus.**
More, **amplius.**
Mountain, **mons.**
Move, **moveo.**
My, **meus.**

Native country, **patria.**
Near, **prope, proxĭmus.**
Necessary, **oportet.**
Neighbor, **finitĭmus.**
Nightingale, **luscinia.**
Nobility, **nobilitas.**
North, **septentriōnes.**
Northwest, *between the north and west.*
Now, **jam.**
Number, **numĕrus.**

Oath, **jusjurandum.**
Obtain, **impĕtro, obtineo.**
Ocean, **oceănus.**
Off, **ad** (near to, over against).
One, **unus.**
Only, **omnĭno.**
On the side of, **ab.**

Opportunity, **facultas.**
Order, **jubeo.**
Our, **noster.**
Overhang, **impendeo.**

Part, **pars.**
Peace, **pax.**
People, **popŭlus.**
Persuade, **persuadeo.**
Place, **locus.**
Prevent, **prohibeo.**
Prosperous, **prosper.**
Province, **provincia.**
Prudent, **prudens.**
Punish, **punio.**
Punishment, **supplicium.**

Reach, **pertineo.**
Rear, **novissĭmum agmen.**
Reason, **causa.**
Remove, be distant, **absum.**
Render satisfaction, **satisfacio.**
Reply, **respondeo.**
Respond, **respondeo.**
Rest, other, **relĭquus.**
Restrain, **prohibeo.**
Return, **reverto.**
Rich, **dis** *or* **dives.**
River, **flumen.**
Rule, **rego.**

Same, **idem.**
Say, **dico.**
Sea, **mare.**
Seek, **quæro.**
Seize, **occŭpo.**
Send, **mitto.**
Send forward, **præmitto.**
Send away, **dimitto.**
Settle, **concēdo.**
Severe, **acer.**
Show, **præsto, demonstro.**
Slope, **vergo.**
Soldier, **miles.**
Song, **cantus.**
So that, **ut.**

Speak, dico.
State, civĭtas.

Take, sumo.
Take away, eripio.
Tear, lacrĭma.
Tell, dico.
Ten, decem.
Territory, finis, pl.
That, ille, is, iste.
That, ut, quo, quin.
Their, suus.
Thing, res.
Think, puto, existĭmo, censeo.
Third, tertĭus.
This, hic.
Thousand, mille.
Three, tres.
Through, per.
Time, tempus, dies.
To, ad, in.
Top, summus.
Toward, in, ad.
Town, oppĭdum.
Transport, transdūco.
True, verus.
Try, tento.
Two, duo.

Valor, virtus.
Village, vicus.
Virtue, virtus.

Wage, gero.
Wait, expecto.
Wall, murus.
Walled town, oppĭdum.
War, bellum.
Warlike, bellicōsus.
Warn, moneo.
Way, iter.
We, nos.
When, ubi, quum.
Who, qui, quis, qualis.
Which, etc., qui, quis, qualis.
Why, quare, cur.
Wisdom, sapientia.
Wise, sapiens.
Wish, volo.
Work, opus.
Worst, pessĭmus. See *malus*.

You, tu, vos.
Your, tuus.

OPINIONS OF BOISE'S FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK.

BOISE'S FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK.

Adapted to Hadley's Greek Grammar, and intended as an introduction to Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph. D., Professor in the University of Chicago. Pages 142. Price, $1.25.

No book of the kind has ever received more favorable commendations from practical teachers, the greater portion of whom have given it the test of actual use in the class-room.

We have space for but few notices among many equally commendatory, and of high authority.

[*From Professor* JAMES HADLEY, *Yale College.*]

"The method you have followed seems to me excellent, and I believe the book will be found as useful in practice as it is beautiful and attractive in its appearance."

[*From Professor* EDWARD A. FAY, *National Deaf Mute College, Washington.*]

"The book seems to me most admirable. . . . Professor Boise's finished scholarship is the guarantee of excellence for whatever he writes; in this case I am very glad that his labors have been in the direction where they are most needed. I heartily commend this book as the best for beginners with which I am acquainted. It will be adopted in this institution."

[*From Professor* ALBERT S. WHEELER, *Cornell University, Ithaca, N. Y.*]

"I have examined Professor Boise's 'First Lessons in Greek' sufficiently to become convinced that it is a valuable contribution to our text-book literature. I shall cheerfully recommend it to students and to teachers."

[*From Professor* M. L. WARD, *Ottawa University, Ottawa, Kansas.*]

"I am highly pleased with Boise's 'First Lessons in Greek.' It is the best book to place into the hands of a beginner in Greek that I ever saw."

[*From Professor* HENRY W. HAYNES, *University of Vermont, Burlington, Vt.*]

"I find it just the thing it purports to be. I will use my endeavors to have it generally adopted in the preparatory schools in this vicinity."

[*From Professor* EDWARD SEARING, *Milton College, Milton, Wis.*]

"I have looked through this book carefully enough to be convinced of its entire fitness and excellence as an introduction to the Anabasis. . . . In mechanical aspects, the volume merits high praise — the typography being unsurpassed, the paper and binding all that need be desired. The book deserves, and will speedily attain a wide use in the schools."

OPINIONS OF BOISE'S FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK.

[*From Professor* MERRICK LYON, *University Grammar School, Providence, R. I.*]

"On careful examination, I find Prof. Boise's 'First Lessons in Greek' a work of rare excellence. It is simple, gradually progressive, and in it the elementary principles of the Greek language are so clearly stated and illustrated as to enable the faithful student to make sure every step in his progress and lay the foundation of exact scholarship. It cannot fail to be highly appreciated by every thorough teacher, and welcomed as a most valuable contribution to classical learning. Its mechanical execution is admirable."

[*From Professor* F. W. BROWN, *Franklin College, Franklin, Ind.*]

"A most excellent work, well adapted to beginners in Greek. I shall adopt it in my classes."

[*From Professor* H. B. LAWRENCE, *Penacook Academy, N. H.*]

"It is just what every beginner in Greek needs. It is the best book of the kind published. I shall introduce it into this school at once."

[*From Professor* JOHN AVERY, *Iowa College, Grinnell, Iowa.*]

"I have examined the 'Greek Lessons' prepared by Prof. Boise, and can heartily commend them to students preparing for college."

[*From Professor* N. L. ANDREWS, *Madison University, Hamilton, N. Y.*]

"Your 'First Lessons in Greek' is capital. It will, I am sure, have no competitor among those who use Hadley's Grammar. It will be introduced into our Grammar School this year."

[*From Professor* HENRY A. BUTTZ, *Drew Theological Seminary, Madison, N. J.*]

"From the high reputation of Prof. Boise, both as a classical scholar and as an author, I expected the 'First Lessons in Greek' to be a first-class book of its kind, and my examination of it has justified my expectations."

From Professor C. G. HUDSON, *Genesee Wesleyan Seminary, Lima, N. Y.*]

"After nearly two terms use, I feel prepared to say that it has no superior. I have never had a class which has made greater proficiency than the one which has used Prof. Boise's work."

[*From Professor* J. B. SEWALL, *Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Me.*]

"I have examined with some care Prof. Boise's 'First Lessons in Greek," and find it an admirable book. Its proper use with beginners must make them thorough scholars. I shall recommend its use, as I have already Prof. Boise's admirable 'First Six Books of the Iliad,' in those preparatory schools in our State which prepare young men for Bowdoin."

OPINIONS OF BOISE'S HOMER'S ILIAD.

BOISE'S HOMER'S ILIAD.

THE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD: With Explanatory Notes intended for beginners in the Epic Dialect; accompanied with numerous references to Hadley's Greek Grammar, to Kuhner's larger Greek Grammar, and Goodwin's Moods and Tenses. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Chicago. Price, $1.75.

This book has received the highest commendations from the best Greek scholars in the country, and has been adopted in our best universities and schools.

[*From Professor* W. W. GOODWIN, *Harvard University, Mass.*]

"I can see that it is a most valuable contribution to classical learning, and I trust it will have all the success which it most certainly deserves."

[*From Professor* A. HARKNESS, *Brown University, R. I.*]

"I take pleasure in expressing to you my high appreciation of its accuracy and value. I congratulate you on the success with which you have accomplished your difficult task. You seem to have been fortunate in combining the essential requisites of a good edition of Homer. The work is evidently the fruit, not only of ripe and critical scholarship, but also of large and successful experience in the class-room. It cannot fail, I think, to be abundantly useful."

[*From Professor* H. B. HACKETT, *Newton, Mass.*]

"For brevity, pertinence, and suggestiveness, I regard the notes as a model of classical annotation."

[*From Professor* R. H. MATHER, *Amherst College, Mass.*]

"I always welcome anything from Professor Boise's classical study, for he never gives forth anything without careful study and mature thought. His works need no 'puffing;' they do that for themselves, and I have no doubt this book will have a large sale. . . . Allow me to add that I am glad so excellent a contribution to the study of Greek should be edited and published with such beautiful type, paper, and binding in the — to say the least — *unancient* city of Chicago."

[*From Dr.* A. C. KENDRICK, *University of Rochester, N. Y.*]

"It is a work prepared with great care and fidelity, and is marked by the exact and thorough scholarship and sound judgment which are to be expected from Professor Boise's long experience and high reputation as a classical instructor."

OPINIONS OF BOISE'S HOMER'S ILIAD.

[*From Professor* W. S. TYLER, *Amherst College, Mass.*]

"I find the notes just what I expected — the right kind in the right places. I am particularly struck with the fullness and yet the brevity and correctness of the grammatical references and illustrations. While they are, of course, accurate, they seem to me also to be eminently judicious. For the use to which these works are chiefly put, namely, that of preparatory students, I do not know how the notes could have been improved."

[*From Professor* W. A. PACKARD, *Dartmouth College.*]

"It is a beautiful text-book in the style of its publication, and, with the scholarly and judicious notes added by Professor Boise, admirably adapted to the wants of students. I hope it will be used in the preparatory schools from which our students come, and shall recommend it with pleasure."

[*From Professor* JAMES HADLEY, *Yale College, Conn.*]

"You have no reason to deprecate a close and searching criticism. If, in writing for beginners, you have carefully confined yourself to that which will be intelligible and useful to them, that is the highest praise of the book and of its author. But only the dullest critic could fail to see that the work implies knowledge and learning much beyond what it undertakes to communicate, and could never have been written by one who was not profoundly versed in the language and the poet. I shall be much surprised if it does not meet with a warm reception from teachers of Greek, and gain a widely-extended circulation."

[*From Professor* HALE HARRISON, *Master in St. Paul's School, Concord, N.H.*]

"Professor Boise's edition of the 'First Six Books of the Iliad' is an admirable, scholarly work. The references to the Grammars seem to be careful and elaborate. The notes are pithy and clear, going right to the point, without any waste of words."

[*From Professor* W. C. COLLAR, *Latin School, Roxbury, Mass.*]

"I have examined Professor Boise's 'First Six Books of the Iliad' with care, and am glad to testify emphatically to its merits. It is, in my opinion, by far the best edition of the Iliad for school use that has ever appeared in this country."